



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

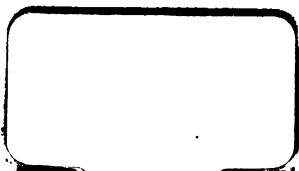




600042655S

34.

183.







600042655S

34.

183.



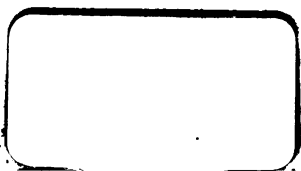




600042655S

34.

183.





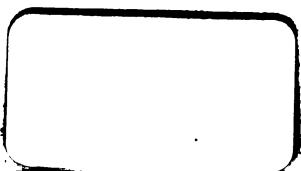




600042655S

34.

183.





Grammar, delivered for a long series of years to the students of St Andrews, he holds himself indebted for nearly all that is philosophical and comprehensive in his ideas on this interesting subject. It is much to be regretted, that the opinions and discoveries of this distinguished scholar have not yet obtained a more permanent "local habitation" than the memories of his grateful pupils: And it will be matter of still deeper regret, if the venerable Professor pass from the present scene without giving to the public, in an authentic form, those views of the principles and structure of language which have long deservedly placed him at the head of Philologists in this country, and which could not fail to be received as one of the most valuable contributions with which Grammatical literature has ever been enriched.

KELSO MANSE, 20th June 1834.

## HINTS

### IN REGARD TO THE MODE OF TEACHING GRAMMAR.

---

It is desirable that the Pupil, before proceeding to study Grammar systematically, should possess as much previous acquaintance with the subject as will enable him at least to distinguish the four principal Parts of Speech : and this preliminary information the Teacher should attempt to give him by oral instruction, in the course of his daily lessons in Reading and Spelling.

In using a Text-book, the chief error to be avoided is that of making the study a mere exercise of memory. It is desirable, no doubt, that fundamental Definitions and leading Rules should be got by heart ; but it is still more desirable that the young person should be able to understand their signification, and to answer all questions that may be put in regard to them.

It may perhaps be thought, that the Exercises which are subjoined to the various sections, afford such means of ascertaining the progress of the Learner as ought to supersede the necessity of teaching those sections themselves *catechetically*. But experience will prove this supposition to be erroneous. These Exercises are, indeed, designed as a trial of the Pupil's knowledge and acuteness ; but they are necessarily too general and limited to afford a sufficient test. And it will probably be found, that a child may be able to perform them all, who has but a vague comprehension of the principles, and a scanty acquaintance with the leading facts of the science.

It may be proper also to guard against the error of supposing, that the exclusive, or even the chief end in view, is to make the Pupil acquainted with the practice of *Parsing*. Were this all that is designed, there would be no necessity for calling in the aid of a Text-book, as a knowledge of the distinguishing properties of the different kinds of words, and an ability to point out and explain their syntactical connexion, might be communicated with sufficient accuracy by mere *viva voce* instruction. The object of teaching Grammar, as a science, is not merely to enable the Student to parse, but also to familiarize him generally with the structure of language, and to give him such an accurate acquaintance with the etymology, application, and combination of words, as will fit him to understand his mother-tongue with ease, and to speak and write it with propriety.

In teaching from the following Work, different methods may be followed; and the type in which it is printed will be found to be so varied and disposed, as to afford the Teacher considerable facilities in adapting his course to the Scholar's acquirements, and the time that can be allotted to the study.

If the Master wishes merely to communicate a *general* knowledge of the subject, or if the period for study is limited, he may satisfy himself with what appears in the large type and that part of the small which is necessary to exemplify the Rules.

If his Pupil has no previous knowledge of the science, and is not restricted as to time, he may take the large type with its illustrations (omitting, however, the introductory section headed "Grammar as a science") as a *first* course; and leave the remaining small type to be taken up, along with the introductory matter, in a *second* and supplementary course.

If the Scholar has adequate preliminary knowledge, and

possesses the command of time, the best plan will be to follow the order of the Work ; in which case,—*with respect to the large type*, the Pupil, after having studied it so as to understand its meaning, should be required to commit it accurately to memory ; and *with respect to the small type*, to make it the subject of frequent perusal and examination, in the same way as is done with Reading Lessons in seminaries conducted on the principles of the Edinburgh Sessional and Circus-Place Schools.\* It is only in this way that the whole science can be brought fully before the Student in its due proportions.

Teachers who have previously employed Text-books in which *Spelling of Words*, *Derivation*, and *Arrangement of Words in Sentences*, are despatched in a few paragraphs, will probably object to the great space allotted to these subjects in the present Work, and feel disposed to omit them either wholly or in part in the process of tuition. But it is hoped that this expedient will not be adopted without mature consideration. There is no branch of Grammar of greater practical utility than *Derivation*. An acquaintance with its *details* is of incalculable moment, especially to those who have no prospect of obtaining a classical education ; and the Teacher cannot confer a greater benefit upon mere English scholars, than by requiring them to get accurately by heart the leading roots, prefixes, and affixes, of the language. Nor is an acquaintance with the general laws which obtain in the *spelling* of words, and their *arrangement* in sentences, unimportant. *Arrangement* is a part of Syntax as essential as either Concord or Government ; and the *general laws of spelling* will scarcely be deemed

---

\* The system of catechetical teaching is fully and admirably expounded in Wood's "Account of the Sessional School;" as also in Professor Pillans' "Principles of Elementary Teaching."

useless by any one who remembers that the design in including Orthography in a course of Grammar is not so much to teach the art of Spelling, as to impress upon the mind the general analogies which prevail in this as in every other branch of the science.

With respect to the mode of teaching the *details* of the Grammar, no specific directions can be given. But it may be suggested generally, that much explanatory information, which no Text-book can supply, must be given by the Teacher in the course of instruction ; that the Pupil should be required to find out additional illustrations of each of the Definitions and Rules ; that he should not be allowed to pass any section until he has thoroughly mastered it ; that the knowledge thus acquired should be impressed upon his memory by frequent revisals and repetitions ; that the Exercises should be written out as well as read by him ; and that he should be constantly called upon, in the course of his ordinary Reading, to apply his grammatical knowledge to the explanation of all the varieties of phraseology which may happen to occur.

# CONTENTS.

---

	Page
NATURE and Objects of Grammar as a Science.....	13
Divisions of English Grammar.....	16

## I. ORTHOGRAPHY.

Letters.....	17
Syllables.....	19
Spelling.....	20
Exercises on Orthography.....	24

## II. ETYMOLOGY.

CLASSIFICATION OF WORDS.....	29
Nouns.....	ib.
Adjectives.....	30
Pronouns.....	33
Verbs.....	36
Adverbs.....	37
Prepositions.....	ib.
Conjunctions.....	38
Interjections.....	ib.
Exercises on the Classification of Words.....	40
INFLECTION OF WORDS.....	49
Nouns.....	50
Adjectives.....	57
Pronouns.....	59
Verbs.....	60
Exercises on the Inflection of Words.....	85
DERIVATION OF WORDS.....	90
Origin of Words.....	92
English Roots.....	ib.
Separable Roots.....	93
Inseparable Roots.....	97
Latin Roots found only in Composition.....	ib.



	Page
Latin Roots which have passed into English through the medium of the French.....	109
Greek Roots found only in Composition.....	ib.
Prepositions and Conjunctions.....	112
English Derivatives.....	115
Primary Signification of Words.....	128

### III. SYNTAX.

RULES OF SYNTAX.....	141
RULES OF CONSTRUCTION.....	ib.
Subject and Verb.....	ib.
Object.....	142
Nouns and Pronouns.....	143
Adjectives.....	145
Verbs.....	146
Prepositions.....	148
Conjunctions.....	ib.
Interjections.....	150
Exercises on the Rules of Construction.....	ib.
RULES OF ARRANGEMENT.....	158
Subject and Verb.....	159
Verb and its Object.....	160
Position of Adjectives.....	161
Pronouns.....	163
The Infinitive.....	ib.
Adverbs.....	ib.
Prepositions.....	164
Conjunctions.....	165
Exercises on Arrangement.....	166
PUNCTUATION.....	171
Exercises on Punctuation.....	175

### IV. PROSODY.

Versification.....	179
Iambic Verse.....	181
Trochaic Verse.....	183
Anapæstic Verse.....	184
Poetical License.....	185
Exercises on Prosody.....	187

A

# . MANUAL OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

---

## NATURE AND OBJECTS OF GRAMMAR AS A SCIENCE.

**THE** object of *Grammar* is to exhibit the structure of language by reducing to a system its leading principles and usages.

Grammar bears the same relation to language that mineralogy bears to minerals, or botany to plants, or descriptive astronomy to the heavenly bodies.

It is the object of the mineralogist to compare together the various minerals that are found in the earth, with the view of deducing general facts respecting their forms, relations, and practical uses. In like manner, it is the object of the grammarian to classify the words of a language, and to collect and record the leading facts respecting their usage.

*A general fact* in nature, or a fact inferred from the comparison of a number of unconnected facts, is called a *law of nature*: *A general fact* in language, or a fact obtained from an extensive induction of particular usages, is called a *rule of grammar*.

It is, for instance, a *general fact* or *law of nature*, deduced from a careful comparison of the characters of minerals, that they can all be *cloven* in such directions as to lay open

their peculiar primitive forms : It is a *general fact* or *rule of grammar*, deduced from a similar comparison of a variety of particular usages, that no sentence is complete unless there be in it at least two words, one expressing the subject spoken of, another expressing what is spoken of it.

In this application, the terms *law* and *rule* are obviously used in a sense somewhat different from their strict and literal meaning. As neither the materials of the universe, nor the words and phrases of a language, can be possessed of the power of obeying or disobeying a *law* or *rule*, the terms must be used with a relation to us as *understanding*, rather than to matter and language as *obeying*, certain rules.

The *rules of grammar* are not general principles which exist antecedently to language and exert an influence over its formation and structure : they are merely the general announcements of facts existing in language, and are determined by previously-established usages, instead of themselves determining these usages.

The leading usages of language are indeed themselves previously determined by other laws,—even the laws which regulate those processes of human thought on which they are necessarily founded. But with *these* laws the grammarian has nothing to do : his business is with actual usages, not with the principles in human nature or the associations which have led to these usages.

Rules of grammar, however, are of as great use in guiding the practice of the student as if they were *rules* in the ordinary sense of the term ; inasmuch as they make him acquainted with those conventional forms of speech which are in universal use, and from which it would be wrong in any individual to deviate.

On the same principle, they may become of use in arresting the progress of language towards corruption,—though, of course, in every case in which there is a contrariety between *rule* and *usage*, the former must bend to the latter, not the latter to the former.

Grammarians make a distinction between *rules* and *exceptions to rules* ; but such a distinction, though not without its

use in practice, has no *real* foundation ; for what is called *the exception*, is an instance of actual usage as truly as that which is called *the rule*.

There is, however, a distinction between *established* and *doubtful* usage of great importance in grammar. *Every* mode of expression used in a country is not to be held as forming a part of *that usage* which may be appealed to as a decisive authority in grammar. No usage is entitled to give law to grammar which is not a *national* and *reputable*, as well as an *actual*, usage.

Language may be divided into *spoken* and *written* language.

*Spoken* language must have had an existence coeval with man ; for from the first he must have had a language to express his ideas and his wants, however scanty its vocabulary may have been.

It was not till men multiplied upon the face of the earth that the art of writing was invented, and it is more than probable, that ages elapsed before *Written* language attained its present state of perfection.

Picture-writing, or Hieroglyphics, seems to have been the earliest method devised for communicating ideas by arbitrary signs. And it is more than probable that various other imperfect expedients were successively adopted before the happy thought occurred of resolving language into its simplest sounds, and indicating these by appropriate signs.\*

---

\* " *Alphabetic* writing is indeed simple, when known ; so also are most inventions. But, simple and easy as it appears to us, we have only to examine the art itself, to be fully convinced, that science, genius, and industry, must have been combined in inventing it. Picture-writing was probably succeeded by hieroglyphical characters. These pictures and hieroglyphical devices would, through negligence, or a desire to abbreviate, gradually vary their form, and lose their resemblance to the objects which they represented. Then they would be converted into a mere verbal denotation, representative of words and not of things. Hence would arise, by a partial and easy analysis, a *syllabic* mode of denotation, which would naturally introduce, as the last step, a *literal* alphabet. This conjecture must seem highly probable, when it is considered, that both a verbal and syllabic mode of notation are still practised by some Eastern nations."—CROMBIE.

Written language consists of a succession of sentences or collocations of words expressing each a distinct idea.

Sentences are resolvable into words, words into syllables, syllables into letters ; so that the grammar of a written language has to do with *Letters, Syllables, Words, and Sentences.*

#### DIVISIONS OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

English Grammar is divided into four parts, *Orthography, Etymology, Syntax, and Prosody.*

*Orthography* treats of letters and syllables ; *Etymology*, of words ; *Syntax*, of sentences ; and *Prosody*, of the laws of verse.

## PART I.

### ORTHOGRAPHY.

ORTHOGRAPHY treats of letters, and of the spelling of words.

#### I. LETTERS.

*Letters*\* are the representatives of the simplest or elementary sounds of a language.

The English alphabet consists of twenty-six letters.

As the letters of a language ought to be the same in number with its elementary sounds, the English alphabet is both redundant and defective.

It is redundant: for *i* and *y* represent the same sound; *q* is equivalent in sound to *k*, *w* to *u*, *x* to *gs* or *ks*; and *c* has no sound but what may be represented either by *k* or by *s*.

It is likewise defective: for it has no proper letters to represent the initial sound in the word *thin*, the initial sound in *then*, the hissing sound of *sh*, or the final sound marked *ng*, as in *sing*: And the five letters, *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, alone, are employed to express not less than *fifteen* different sounds; *a* representing *four*; *e*, *two*; *i*, *two*; *o*, *four*; and *u*, *three* sounds; as may be seen in the following words,—fate, far, fall, fat; me, met; pine, pin; note, move, nor, not; tube, tub, bull.

Letters are divided into vowels and consonants.

---

\* It is conjectured that *letters* were originally cut upon stones. At first they were of a square or cross form, being composed entirely of straight lines. But in the course of time the corners were for the sake of despatch rounded off. The letter *e* supplies an instance of this process. *E* was originally a vertical line crossed by three horizontal lines. *s* is the same letter with the angles rounded off: and the change from *i* to *e* is one which despatch would soon render necessary.

A *Vowel* is a letter which makes by itself a perfect sound.

A *Consonant* is a letter which cannot be sounded without a vowel.

*A, e, i, o, u,* (and *w* and *y*, when they do not begin a word or syllable,) are vowels. The remaining nineteen letters (with *w* and *y*, when they begin a word or syllable) are consonants.

The distinction of letters into vowels and consonants arises from the structure of the human organs of speech. The sounds produced by the openings of the organs, and which may be prolonged without changing their position, are represented by the vowels; the sounds produced by the joinings or shuttings of the organs are represented by the consonants.\*

Consonants are divided into mutes and semi-vowels, according as the articulations, or joinings of the organs in the enunciation of them, are more or less close. Thus, *k, p, and t*, which wholly intercept the voice, as in the syllables *ek, ep, et*, are called mutes; *b, d, and g*, which admit a short prolongation of sound, as in *eb, ed, eg*, are called semi-vowels.

The consonants have also received different names, from the organs chiefly employed in uttering them. Thus, *p, b, f, v*, are named labials, or letters of the lip; *s, x*, dentals, or letters of the teeth; *d, t*, gingivals, or letters of the gums; *g, j, k*, palatals, or letters of the palate; *m, n*, nasals, or letters of the nose; *l, r*, linguals, or letters of the tongue. But as more than one organ is concerned in the utterance of almost every consonant, these names are not *strictly*, but only *generally*, applicable.

The union of two vowels, pronounced by a single emission of the voice, is called a *Diphthong*.

The union of three vowels is called a *Triphthong*. When both vowels are heard, the diphthong is called *proper*; when only one is heard, it is called an *improper* diphthong.

---

\* *Articulation*, or the power of closing the organs, constitutes the great difference in this respect between man and the brutes; the latter, being unable to articulate, can utter only vowel sounds.

The diphthongs in English are numerous; the triphthongs are only *three*,—*eau*, *ieu*, and *iew*. *U* preceded by *q* is never reckoned part of a diphthong or triphthong, but treated as if it were part of the *q*.

In written compositions the letters have two forms, *capitals* and *small letters*.

*Capitals* are used only at the beginning of words in particular situations.

*Small letters* form the body of the composition.

The following are the situations in which words are begun with capitals:—

The first word of every sentence, whether in prose or verse; the first word of every line in poetry; the first word of a quotation in a direct form; the names of the Supreme Being; all proper names, and adjectives derived from proper names; the names of the days of the week and of the months of the year; any word which the writer may think very important, as the Reformation, the Revolution; the pronoun *I*, and the interjection *O*; and generally also the name of an object personified, as “Where is thy sting, O Death!”

## II. SYLLABLES.

A Syllable is a simple sound, or a combination of simple sounds, pronounced by a single impulse of the voice, and represented by one or more letters; as, *a*, *an*, *and*, *wand*.

In every syllable there must be at least one vowel.

Words of one syllable are called *Monosyllables*; words of two syllables, *Dissyllables*; words of three syllables, *Trisyllables*; and words of more than three syllables, *Polysyllables*.

The best mode of dividing words into syllables is to follow as nearly as possible the divisions made by the organs of speech in accurately pronouncing them: Thus, *hab-it*, *ham-let*, *cru-el*, *an-ti-mal*.

The only case in which it is allowable to adopt a different



mode is when the pronunciation is anomalous or peculiar. Thus, in such words as *vicious*, *condition*, &c., where *ei* and *ti* are pronounced like *sh*, the division is *vi-cious*, *con-di-tion*, not *vici-ous*, *con-diti-on*.

### III. SPELLING.

Spelling is the art of expressing words by their proper letters.

The spelling of the English language, in common with that of all living languages, is regulated chiefly, though not wholly, by the prevailing mode of pronunciation.\*

The chief anomalies in English orthography proceed from the number of silent consonants, and the impossibility of describing their situations by any thing like general rules.

The following instances of words in which the consonants *b*, *c*, *d*, *g*, and *h*, are silent, will exhibit the nature of English usage on this point:—

Debt	Indict	Handsome	Gnat	Thyme
Dumb	Victuals	Groundsel	Reign	Asthma
Subtle	Scent	Knowledge	Impugn	Heir
Bdellium	Ascend	Fieldfare	Phlegm	Rhetoric†

---

\* The spelling of words, though mainly determined by pronunciation, is also, to a considerable extent, regulated by etymology. Accordingly, an attention to the etymology of words is often serviceable in enabling us to fix their spelling. Thus, *horison* is properly written with *x*, and not with *s*, because the Greek word from which it is derived has *x*; *mystery* is properly written with *y*, and not with *i*, because *y*, and not *i*, is the representative of the corresponding letter in the original Greek word. Pronunciation, however, always determines in the end the spelling of words; and hence many words, which were originally written in strict accordance with their etymology, come in the course of ages to be written in such a shape as tends altogether to obscure their origin. Who would expect to find *chirurgion* in our modern *surgeon*, or *eleemosynie* in *alms*, or *fantasy* in *fancy*?

† Persons versant in the etymology of the English language will not fail to remark, that these silent consonants, though anomalies in a language whose spelling is so much regulated by pronunciation, are often valuable as indications of the origin of the words in which they occur. Those who, in such words as *debt*,

Almost the only orthographical usages that approach to such uniformity as to warrant the deduction of general rules from them, are those which respect the *final letters* of words, and the mode in which *augments*, or additional syllables, are appended to them.

1. *Final Letters.*

1. *E* is the only vowel that terminates any very considerable number of English words; and final *e* is always silent, except in a few monosyllables,—*me, we, he, she*; a few words in *ee*; as, *free, tree, refugees*; and a few terms of foreign origin; as, *epitomè, synecdochè*.

2. All the consonants are used as *final* letters, with the exception of *j, q, v,* and *o* and *g* soft.

3. The final letter of a word is, in general, either a silent *e* or a consonant, according as the vowel contained in the final syllable of the word has or has not its long sound. Thus, *made, mad*; *mete, met*; *pine, pin*; *note, not*; *tube, tub*.

From this general principle, however, there are some deviations:—

(1.) The words *have, bade, are, were, give, come, one, done, move,* with some others, end in silent *e*, though the preceding vowels have not their long sounds.

(2.) Words ending in the consonant *h* do not admit a silent *e* after them, though the preceding vowel be long,—except sometimes when preceded by *i*; as, *bathe, swathe, tithe, clothe*.

(3.) Words ending in two different consonants do not admit a silent *e* after them, though the preceding vowel be long; as, *night, bolt, host*.

(4.) Words whose final syllable contains a diphthong do not admit the silent *e* after them; as, *faith, grief, heat, toil*.

4. In *Monosyllables*, the final consonant is generally single, except in words ending in *f, l,* or *s,* preceded by a single vowel, which generally double the consonant.

---

*reign, &c.,* recognise *debitum, regnum, &c.,* will feel pleased that the *h, g, &c.,* have hitherto escaped those processes of elision which, in living languages, generally make such havoc of the original elements of words.

Thus, we write *rub, bad, frog, oh, ham, tin, nap, fur, pet, fox, phis*, each with a single consonant; but we double the consonant in *staff, stiff, scoff, stuff; all, ell, hill, roll, skull; mass, less, hiss, toss, truss*.

The words in which this rule does not hold are chiefly the following:—*ebb, add, odd, egg, inn, err, purr, butt, buzz; and if, of; as, gas, has, was, yes, is, his, this, wis, us, thus*.

5. In words of more than one syllable, the final consonant is generally single, except in words ending in *f* or *s*, preceded by a single vowel, which double the consonant.

Thus, we write *syllabub, cinnamon, sinister, &c.*; but we double the consonant in *distaff, mastiff, rebuff, harass, &c.*

6. The use of *c* hard as a final consonant is peculiar. It is used as a final letter only in words of more than one syllable, and in these only when preceded by *i* or *ia*; as, *music, maniac*; in monosyllables, it is always accompanied by *k*; as, *lack, deck, trick, lock, luck*, except *lac, sinc*.

## 2. Augments.

When words are increased by appending to them such additions as *s, ed, er, est, ing, able, ible, en, ish, ful, ous, ly, y, ment, ness, &c.*, they undergo changes in certain cases in their final letters; the change varying according as the final letter is a vowel or a consonant.

7. Words ending in silent *e*, upon assuming an augment, generally lose the *e*, if the augment begin with a vowel, but retain the *e*, if the augment begin with a consonant.

Thus, silent *e* is cut off before *able, ible, ing, ish, &c.*; as, *cure, curable; sense, sensible; place, placing; slave, slavish*; but it is retained before *ful, less, ly, ment, ness, &c.*; as, *peaceful, guileless, closely, incitement, paleness*.

The principal deviations from this rule are in the cases of the augments *able* and *ous*. When silent *e* is preceded by *v* or by *c* or *g* soft, the *e* is retained before *able*; as, *moveable, peaceable, chargeable*. When silent *e* is preceded by *g* soft, it is retained before *ous*; as, *courageous*; and when preceded by *c* soft, it is changed into *i* before *ous*; as, *grace, gracious*.

8. Words ending in *y* preceded by a vowel generally retain *y* upon taking an augment; as *boy*, *boys*, *boyish*; *coy*, *coyly*. But words ending in *y* preceded by a consonant change the *y* into *i* before receiving an addition; as, *fancy*, *fanciful*; *ready*, *readily*; except when the addition is *ing* or *ish*, or *'s*; in both of which cases the *y* is retained; as, *carrying*, *babyish*.

Words ending in *ty*, upon assuming the affix *ous*, change *y* into *e*; as, *beauty*, *beauteous*.

9. Words which end in a single consonant preceded by a single vowel, on receiving an augment beginning with a vowel, either double the final consonant, or preserve it single, according as the last syllable is or is not accented.

If the last syllable is accented (or if the word be monosyllabic), the consonant is doubled upon assuming the augment; as, *begin*, *beginner*; *glad*, *gladden*. But if the accent falls on any syllable except the last (or if a diphthong precedes the final consonant), the consonant is not doubled; as, *offer*, *offering*; *defeat*, *defeated*.\*

The words, *apparelled*, *cancelled*, *caviller*, *coralline*, *counsellor*, *crystalline*, *duellist*, *jeweller*, *levelling*, *libeller*, *revelling*, *rivalling*, *traveller*, are not spelt in accordance with this rule.

10. Words ending in a double consonant retain both consonants upon assuming the augment, whether the augment begin with a vowel or a consonant; except words in *ll*, which generally drop one *l* before taking an augment beginning with a consonant. Thus, *scoffer*, *oddity*; *fulness*, *chilness*.

### 3. Compounds, &c.

11. Compound words are generally written in the same way as the simple words which compose them. Thus, *herein*, *up-hill*, *hereafter*, *recall*, &c.

---

\* In some instances, the accent of a word is changed in order to admit the augment;—in which case, the accentuation of the augmented, not the original word, determines the spelling. Thus, *confe'r*, *co'nference*; *refe'r*, *re'ference*; *prese'r*, *pre'ferable*; *me'tal*, *meta'llic*, *me'dal*, *meda'llion*. Overlooking this circumstance, some grammarians have thought it necessary to treat *confer'ence*, *reference*, *preferable*, *metallic*, *medallion*, &c., as if they were deviations from the ordinary rule.

But there are many deviations from this usage, especially among words which end in *ll*; as, *albeit*, *almighty*, *already*, *also*, *altogether*, *always*, *withal*, *bulrush*, *fulfil*, *careful*, *handful*.

12. There are many words in English which may be used with propriety in two different ways.

Thus, the words *connection* and *connexion*, *controul* and *control*, *enquire* and *inquire*, *honour* and *honor*, *inflection* and *inflexion*, *negotiate* and *negociate*, &c., are used indiscriminately by the best modern writers.

13. The deviations from analogy in English orthography are so numerous, that they can be fully acquired only by a practical acquaintance with the usages of the language.

The following are some of the most frequent :—

It is the general usage of the language to change the French termination *tre* into *ter*, in adopting French words; accordingly, we write *chamber* and *charter*, instead of the French *chambre* and *chartre*; but we still retain *metre*, *nitre*, *sceptre*, *sepulchre*, *spectre*, and *theatre*.

We write *author* without *u*, but retain the *u* in *honour*.

*Moveable* and *immovable* are both established usages; so are *tameable* and *blamable*.

We write *equalise* with only one *l*, and *tranquillize* with two, though the primitive words *equal* and *tranquil* both end alike in one *l*.

*Defence* and *offence* are established usages; but their derivatives are *defensive* and *offensive*.

We write *exceed*, *proceed*, and *succeed*; but though the Latin *cedo* be the root of all alike, we write *accede*, *recede*, *secede*.

---

## EXERCISES ON ORTHOGRAPHY.

### LETTERS.

What are letters? What ought to be the number of letters in a language? How many elementary sounds are in the word *aërial*, and what are they?

What other letter represents the same sound as *i* ? What other the same as *k* ? How many sounds has *c* ? Which are the redundant letters in the English alphabet ?

What are the simple sounds in the English language that have no single letters to represent them ? What is meant by an *initial* sound ? Mention a word in which the hissing sound of *sh* occurs. How many sounds does *a* represent ? How many *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, respectively ? And give additional instances to those quoted above.

Explain the difference between a *vowel* and a *consonant*. Say in which of the following words *w* and *y* are vowels, and in which consonants, and why ?—*why*, *yonder*, *awe*, *aye*, *wayward*, *yaw*, *yawn*, *y-clept*.

From what does the distribution of letters into vowels and consonants arise ? How often is there a closing of the organs in pronouncing each of the following words :—*velocity*, *article*, *London*, *Alexander*, *air* ? Distinguish between a *mute* and a *semi-vowel*, and give examples of each. Which organs are joined in pronouncing the letters *t*, *m*, *r*, *p*, respectively ?

Explain which of the diphthongs are proper, and which improper, in the words *coin*, *moon*, *maintain*, *heat*, *eider-down*, *moan*, *fawn*, *raillery*, &c. In each of the following words, *note*, *tune*, *ere*, two vowels occur in one and the same syllable ; why are they not called diphthongs ? Quote words in which triphthongs occur.

*Rectify the errors in the use of capital letters in the following sentences :—*

The Great phocion, One of the most celebrated Personages among the Ancient grecians, was condemned to death by his ungrateful Countrymen ; And, when about to drink the fatal Hemlock, was asked if he had any thing to say to his Son. “ bring him before me,” said He. “ my Dear Son,” said phocion, “ i entreat you to serve your country with as much Fidelity as I have done, And, above all, to forget that an unjust death was the Price with which She recompensed My services.”

he dies ! The Friend of Sinners dies !  
 lo ! salem's Daughters weep around ;  
 A solemn Darkness veils the skies ;  
 a sudden trembling shakes the ground.

say, "live for ever, Glorious king!  
 born to Redeem, and Strong to save!"  
 then ask the Monster, "where's thy Sting?  
 And Where's thy Victory, boasting grave?"

## SYLLABLES.

*Divide the following words into syllables :—*

Abjure, ancient, arrogant, ashes, bluster, capricious, cherish, coalition, coeval, conviction, debase, delicious, efficacious, ferocious, filter, filtration, gardener, impregnable, intrepid, judicial, momentary, musician, nuncio, onion, optical, perversity, quaternion, reverential, society, solidity, tergiversation, transient, unanimity, union, verisimilitude, worshipped, yellowish, zany.

## SPELLING.

*Correct the false spelling in the following words, by introducing the silent consonants that are omitted :—*

Dout, dum, clim, com, crum, lam, lip, num, sutle.  
 Asend, desent, musle, sene, sience, septe, zarina.  
 Hankerchief, hansel, grounsel.  
 Benin, desin, ensin, forein, nash, poinant.  
 Agast, onest, rapsody, reumatism, rubarb, Tames, Tomas.

*Explain why each of the following words has a silent e as the final letter (see Rules 1, 2, and 3) :—*

Alpine, blade, cone, divine, fete, guide, here, pique.  
 Grotesque, festive, passive, precipice, courage.  
 Come, done, give, have, move, were, lathe, tithe.

*Correct the false spelling in the following sentences (see Rules 4 and 5) :—*

The trees budd, the bees humm, and the fishes leap in the nett; let us al hasten to fil our pitchers with thiss water before the eb of the tid.

You cannot place too much stres upon learning to spel properly.

Time is like a river stil appearing to pas away, yet stil coming onn.

Thiss strangerr hass been able to amas wealth, though he came to our country with only his staf in his hand.

Unroll that mapp, that I may follow the course of the canall untill it fal into the sea. Now hold it til I pas my finger along its course.

*Correct the spelling of the following words (see Rule 6):—*

Attac, ecclesiastick, logick, musick, napsac, schismatick, sic, terrifick, trac, zinck, zodiack.

*Affix the augments ing, ed, to the following words (see Rules 7 and 8):—*

Amplify, amuse, analyze, annoy, behave, calumniate, charge, defy, dedicate, destroy, efface, flay, fortify, humble, menace, rejoice.

*Affix to the following words such of the augments, able, ible, en, ish, ful, ous, ly, y, ment, ness, as their signification will allow them to take (see Rules 7 and 8):—*

Able, acknowledge, allege, allow, allay, ample, appellative, battle, beauty, blaspheme, body, bone, branchy, busy, cognosce, commence, cure, dandy, deduce, deface, duty, drone, elope, envy, force, fury, godly, grace, knave, ignoble, issue, joy, judge, measure, pity, plenty, space, lame, usury, white.

*Affix to the following words ed, ex, ing, or such other of the augments as they will admit (see Rules 9 and 10):—*

Assess', annul', aver', begin', ca'per, cav'il, decrep'it, entrap', jew'el, inhab'it, intermit', li'bel, mad, permit', rebel', refer', spir'it, transfer', trepan', vis'it.

*Correct the false spelling in the following sentences, applying the rules:—*

A wis man is never les alon than when alone.

The finn of a fish is, as it wer, the limb by which he balances his body.

Modesty in youth is better than comelyness; and diligence than a plaiful fancy.

By defering repentance, we become the destroyers of our own happyness.

Cultivate sedatness of manner; be servicable to others; live harmlesly; avoid willful evil; be allways obligeing: These qualitys are all truely desireable.

A favor confere with delicacy doubles the obligation.



But, O ! how altered was its sprightlyer tone,  
When Cheerfullness, a nymph of healthiest hue,  
Her bow across her shoulders flung,  
Her buskins gemed with morning dew,  
Blew an inspireing air, that dal and thickett rung,  
The hunters' call to Fawn and Dryad known !

As the lark with varied tun  
Carolls to the evening loud,  
Mark the mild resplendent moon  
Breakking through a partted cloud.  
Linnets with unnumbered nots,  
And the cuckoo bird with two,  
Tuncing sweet their mellow throates,  
Bidd the seting sun adieu !

## PART II.

---

### ETYMOLOGY.

ETYMOLOGY treats of *the Classification, the Inflection, and the Derivation* of words.

#### I. CLASSIFICATION OF WORDS.

In the English language, there are at least ninety thousand different words; yet they may all be arranged under eight classes.

These eight classes of words are called the *Eight Parts of Speech*; and the names by which they are distinguished are, *Noun, Adjective, Pronoun, Verb, Adverb, Preposition, Conjunction, and Interjection*.

1. *Noun* is the name given to all words which are simply the names of things; as, *boy, school, lesson, obedience, wisdom*.

The noun is the only part of speech which expresses a distinct idea without the help of any other word; and the words called nouns must have been the earliest invented of all words, as things must have had names before they could form the subject of discourse.

There are *two* kinds of Nouns, *Proper* and *Common*.

*Proper* Nouns denote the names of individuals only, and are used to distinguish them from the rest of the same species; as, *John, London*.

But, O ! how altered was its sprightlyer tone,  
When Cheerfullness, a nymph of healthiest hue,  
Her bow across her shoulders flung,  
Her buskins gemed with mornning dew,  
Blew an inspireing air, that dal and thickett rung,  
The hunters' call to Fawn and Dryad known !

As the lark with varied tun  
Carolls to the evening loud,  
Mark the mild resplendent moon  
Breakking through a partted cloud.  
Linnets with unnumbered nots,  
And the cuckoo bird with two,  
Tuneing sweet their mellow throates,  
Bidd the seting sun adieu !

## PART II.

---

### ETYMOLOGY.

ETYMOLOGY treats of *the Classification, the Inflection, and the Derivation* of words.

#### I. CLASSIFICATION OF WORDS.

In the English language, there are at least ninety thousand different words; yet they may all be arranged under eight classes.

These eight classes of words are called the *Eight Parts of Speech*; and the names by which they are distinguished are, *Noun, Adjective, Pronoun, Verb, Adverb, Preposition, Conjunction, and Interjection*.

1. *Noun* is the name given to all words which are simply the names of things; as, *boy, school, lesson, obedience, wisdom*.

The noun is the only part of speech which expresses a distinct idea without the help of any other word; and the words called nouns must have been the earliest invented of all words, as things must have had names before they could form the subject of discourse.

There are *two* kinds of Nouns, *Proper* and *Common*.

*Proper* Nouns denote the names of individuals only, and are used to distinguish them from the rest of the same species; as, *John, London*.

than one ; but they now express it in the most *unemphatical* manner.\*

*The* is a word of the same nature with *that*, of which, indeed, it is probably an abbreviation. It differs, however, from *that* in marking the object less emphatically.†

*This*, *that*, and *yon*, have obtained the name of *Demonstratives*, from their being employed to *point out emphatically* the objects to which they refer ; but they are obviously *ordinal* words ; *this* being descriptive of a near object, *that* of one a little farther removed, and *yon* of one still more distant.

*Any*,‡ the diminutive of *ane* or *one*, involves, in common with *a* and *an*, the idea of unity ; but it is used still more indefinitely, being employed to denote *whatever one* of a number it be.

*All* denotes the aggregate or whole of a number consisting of several parts.

*Many*, *few*, *several*, *some*, denote number *indefinitely*. *Many* is opposed to *few* ; as, “ *Many* are called, but *few* chosen.” *Several* originally denoted one thing *severed* from another, and is still so used in law language ; as, “ A joint and

\* It is worthy of remark, that *one* itself admits of an indefinite use, somewhat like the French *on*. Thus, “ *One* would imagine that punishment would deter from crime.” In this case it has a possessive case. Thus, “ *One’s* person should be protected.”

† In most Grammars, *a* or *an*, and *the*, are referred to a separate part of speech called *the Article*. But the identity of *a* and *an* with *ane* or *one*, and of *the* with *that*, proves that there is no necessity for adding another part of speech in order to describe them, though it may be convenient to have a distinct name for them. The relation of *a* or *an* to *one*, is nearly the same as the relation of *the* to *that* ; and the main difference between them is, that *a*, *an*, and *the*, convey their respective ideas *less*, and *one* and *that*, *more* emphatically. The history of the words is probably this : *ae*, *ane*, when not opposed to *more*, and therefore not emphatical, were by celerity of pronunciation changed into *a*, *an* ; and *that*, when not opposed to *this*, was shortened into *the*.

‡ *Y* being the diminutive termination in English, *any* is the diminutive of *ane* or *an*. It is a curious coincidence, that *ullus*, which is the Latin *any*, is also the diminutive of *unus*, the Latin *one*. The regular diminutive of *unus* is *unulus* ; which was contracted first into *unlus*, and afterwards smoothed into *ullus*. The diminutive termination *y* or *ie*, is probably *wee*, little, abbreviated ; *laddie* being *lad-wee*, *lassie*, *lass-wee*, &c.

*several* estate." *Some* denotes a larger number than *several*, but in opposition to *many* a small number; as, "*Many* engaged in the enterprise; *some* of them succeeded."

*Each, every, either, neither*, denote the persons or things which make up a number, as taken separately or distributively. They are often called *Distributives*.

*Both* signifies two persons or things taken together; *Only*\* signifies one by itself.

*Other* denotes the second of two persons or things, and is often contrasted with *one*; as, "The *one* consented, the *other* refused." *Another* is *other* with the indefinite article prefixed.

*No* and *none* (or no-one) imply the negation of all number; and are classed with *numerals*, in the same way as *nothing*, which implies the negation of a thing, is classed with *nouns*.

All the numerals admit of being used either with or without the nouns which they define, with the exception of *a, an, the, every, only, no*, which cannot be used by themselves, and *none*, which cannot be used except by itself.

Numerals are not, however, in this respect an exception to the law of adjectives; for *all adjectives* which describe persons or things with sufficient clearness may be used without their nouns by prefixing *the* to them. Thus, "The *rich* ought to consider the poor."

3. *Pronoun* is the name given to a class of words which are frequently employed to supply the place of nouns.†

The *Pronouns* are,—*I, thou, he, she, it; my, thy, his, her, its, our, your, their; who, which, that, as; what, whether, whoever, whosoever, whatever, whatsoever*, and the inseparable word *self, selves*.

---

\* *Only* is *one-like, ly* being universally admitted to be the same with *like*.

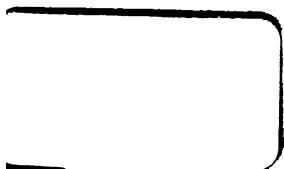
† The notion that pronouns have been invented to prevent the too frequent iteration of nouns seems erroneous. Even supposing the pronoun fit to stand as the representative of the noun in every case (which it obviously is not), it must be expressed as often as the noun of which it is the representative. And in what respect is the repetition of one class of words preferable to the repetition of another?



000426558

34.

183.



and these  
*me, my,*

*posses-*

*it.*

denotes  
 the same,  
 that the

third  
 possessed.  
*ich it*

*r, its,*

re-

s well  
*ively,*

*as.*

*rela-*  
 if the

s the  
*to* to  
 lative

*hich,*  
 ings  
*uch*<sup>u</sup>

—  
 adjec-  
 their  
*toios,*



The appellation "Pronoun" is far from being *accurately* descriptive of these words. Only a few of them are ever strictly the representatives of nouns; and in all cases they serve purposes which the mere repetition of the nouns would not answer.\*

The distinguishing property of pronouns seems to be, that they *refer* to some correlative word or words, either expressed or understood, which they suggest, and in some instances represent.

Thus, in the sentence, "John said to his brother, *I* request you to walk to the city, and bring me the book *which* I ordered," *I* obviously *refers* to John, *you* to brother, and *which* to book. The *reference* of *I* to John, and of *you* to brother, is indeed very general compared with that of *which* to book; but still the reference is in all the cases sufficiently distinct to recall or suggest to the reader of the sentence the words to which they refer.

The word or words to which a pronoun refers is called the *Antecedent*, or, more properly, the *Correlative*.†

This antecedent may be either a single word, a sentence, or a clause of a sentence.

\* In at least two instances (*I* and *thou*) the pronouns *obviously* denote something more than the nouns they represent,—something that it would not be possible to convey by the nouns without subjoining to them some distinctive circumstances to discriminate them from others of the same name. Thus, in the sentences, "The Lord said to Moses, *I* am the God of Abraham," "Nathan said to David, *thou* art the man!" the substitution of the nouns *Lord* and *David*, for the pronouns *I* and *thou*, would not answer the purpose of conveying the sentiments with any thing of their present explicitness and energy.

† The term *antecedent* is objectionable, because the correlative word or clause not unfrequently follows instead of preceding the pronoun. Thus, in the sentence, "Blessed are *they* that mourn," the clause "that mourn," which is the correlative of the pronoun *they*, succeeds it. So it succeeds its correlative in the following instances:—"It is certain *that the battle is lost*." "The Jews, it is well known, *are a stiffnecked people*."

The only pronouns that have only single words—and these words nouns—for their antecedents, are, *I, thou, he, she, my, thy, his, and her.*

Pronouns may be divided into *Personal, Possessive, Relative, and Reciprocal.*

The *Personal* Pronouns are, *I, thou, he, she, it.*

*I*, which is called the pronoun of the *first* person, denotes that the person speaking and the person spoken of are the same,

*Thou*, the pronoun of the *second* person, denotes that the person spoken to and the person spoken of are the same.

*He* and *she* denote that the subject of discourse is some third person distinct from both the speaker and the person addressed.

*It* gives notice that some object or circumstance to which it refers is spoken of.

The *Possessive* Pronouns are, *my, thy, his, her, its, our, your, their.*

They are so called, because they are used to express the relation of property or possession.

They obviously correspond to the personal pronouns, as well as are derived from them; but they are all used *adjectively*, and cannot stand alone without a noun.

The *Relative* Pronouns are, *who, which, that, as.*

They are so called, because their reference to their *correlative* is generally more direct and immediate than that of the other pronouns.

Thus, in the sentence, "The scholar *who* disobeys the master deserves punishment," the reference of *who* to *scholar* is so obvious and immediate, that the correlative cannot be mistaken.

*Who*, is applied only to persons real or metaphorical; *which*, to things inanimate; *that* and *as*, indiscriminately to things animate or inanimate; *as*, has generally the adjective *such*\* joined with its correlative.

---

\* ~~None~~ <sup>None</sup> will doubt the propriety of classing *such* with adjectives, relative pronouns, who remember that their in and Greek are *talīs, qualis*; and *toios*, *hoi*

*What* and *whether* are Compound Relatives, *what* being equivalent to *the which*, *that which*, and *those which*; *whether*\* denoting *which of the two*.

*Whoever* and *whatever* are simply the relatives *who* and *what*, with the affix, *ever*, added, in order to render their application indefinite.

*Who*, *which*, *what*, when used to ask a question, are commonly called *Interrogative Pronouns*.

The only *Reciprocal Pronoun* is the inseparable word *self*, *selves*, which is added to the personal pronouns to notify that the agent and the object of the action are the same or correlative.

Thus, the sentence "Cato killed *him*," denotes that Cato killed some other person; but the sentence "Cato killed *himself*," points out that the agent and the object of the action are the same.

4. *Verb* is the name given to all words whose office is to predicate or assert; as, *strikes*, *walks*, *is*.

Thus, in the sentences, "John *walks*;" "James *strikes* the table;" "The boy *is* idle;" *walks*, *strikes*, and *is*, are *verbs*.

As the noun is the word in a sentence which names the thing about which we speak, so the verb is the word which asserts or declares what we say concerning it.

The verb, in common with the adjective, expresses the quality or property of a noun; but these parts of speech are quite distinct: the adjective merely expresses quality as conjoined with the noun, it *affirms* nothing; but the verb always *affirms*.

Thus, in the two expressions, "The joyful man," and "The man rejoices," both the adjective "*joyful*" and the verb "*rejoices*" denote in common the property joy, as connected with the noun "*man*;" but the latter alone expresses affirmation.

---

\* *Whether* is probably *who-others*.

Verbs may be divided into *Transitive* and *Intransitive*.

*Transitive* Verbs denote that kind of action which passes from the agent to something else.

*Intransitive* Verbs denote that kind of action or state of being which is limited to the agent or subject.

Thus, *beat, love, kill*, are *transitive* verbs, as expressing a kind of action by which the agent affects something foreign to himself. *Sit, sleep, stand*, are *intransitive* verbs, as denoting simple being or action limited to the subject or agent.

5. *Adverb* is the name given to all words which are joined with verbs, adjectives, or other adverbs, to modify their meaning; as, "He reads *well*; she is *very* gentle."

Adverbs seem to perform the same office to verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs, that adjectives perform to nouns.

Thus, in the phrase, "Cicero was *eloquent*," the term *eloquent* being a word used to modify the noun Cicero, is an *adjective*; but in the phrase, "Cicero was *exceedingly* eloquent," the term *exceedingly* being a word used to modify the adjective *eloquent*, is an *adverb*. In like manner, in the phrase, "Cæsar fought *bravely*," "*bravely*," as modifying the verb "*fought*," is an *adverb*.

The adverb serves merely to express in one word what may always be expressed by two or more words. Thus, had we not possessed such words as *here, there, thither, eloquently*, we could have expressed the ideas conveyed by them, by using the equivalent circumlocutions, *in this place, in that place, to that place, in an eloquent manner*.

6. *Preposition* is the name given to a class of words which serve to connect other words, and to show the relation that one thing bears to another; as, "Death entered *into* the world *by* sin."

Prepositions are so called from their being generally put before other words.

The Prepositions in most common use are,—

*About, above, across, after, against, along, amid, amidst, among, amongst, around, at, before, behind, below, beneath, besides, between, betwixt, beyond, but, by, down, except, for, from, in, into, near, nigh, of, off, on, out, over, round, save, through, throughout, to, towards, under, underneath, up, upon, with, within, without.*

A number of prepositions, which are of great use in modifying the words to which they are prefixed, are called *inseparable* prepositions, from their never being used but as parts of other words. Such are, *a, be, con, mis, pre, re, sub*; as in *afoot, befall, conjoin, mishap, prefix, regain, subtract, &c.*

7. *Conjunction* is the name given to all words which are used simply to connect words and sentences.

The Conjunctions in most general use are,—

*And, also; either, or; neither, nor; though, yet; but, however; for, that; because, since; therefore, wherefore, then; if, unless, lest.*

8. *Interjection* is the name given to certain sounds expressive of sudden emotion.

They are so called, because they are generally thrown in between the parts of a sentence without any reference to the structure of the other parts of it.

- It may be questioned, whether mere irregular sounds—often entirely instinctive and mechanical, and uttered as passion dictates—ought to be dignified with the name of a part of language; but as a few of them have become the customary modes of expressing particular passions and feelings in every nation, grammarians have thought it right to consider them as words, and to assign them a place in their classification.

The following are the chief Interjections:—

*Ah, alas; pshaw, fie; ha, ha, ha; lo, hush, huzza, O, oh, heighho.*

Sometimes verbs, nouns, and adjectives, uttered by way of

exclamation in a detached manner, are classed among interjections ; as, *hail ! welcome ! heavens ! strange !* \*

All these *eight* classes of words are not equally important and essential.

*Nouns* and *Verbs* are the only indispensable parts of speech—the one to express the subject spoken of, and the other the predicate or what is affirmed of it.

The *Adjective* is a secondary part of speech, and may be expressed in every instance by a noun with the preposition of prefixed. Thus, “good man” is equivalent to “man of goodness.”

The *Personal Pronouns* give information which no other words are capable of conveying ; but the other pronouns may in general have their place supplied by the words or clauses to which they relate.

*Adverbs, Prepositions, and Conjunctions*, do not seem to form, as far as import is concerned, distinct species of words, but to be merely abbreviations of nouns, adjectives, or verbs.

As their radical meaning, however, is either obscure or generally unknown, it is convenient to classify them according to their present use rather than their original character.

Some words, from the different ways in which they are used, belong sometimes to one part of speech sometimes to another.

\* The following simple directions have been given for enabling the pupil to distinguish the principal parts of speech : though it is better when he is able to distinguish them by a knowledge of their discriminating properties without the help of rules.

A word that can be properly added to the phrase, *I am thinking of*, or, *I am thinking of the*, is a *Noun*.

A word that will take the noun *thing* or *things* after it, is an *Adjective of quality*.

A word that will take before it the pronouns *I, thou, he, or we*, is a *Verb*.

Words that answer to the questions *how ? how much ? when ? or where ?* joined to a verb or an adjective, are *Adverbs*.

*Prepositions* may be distinguished from conjunctions by their admitting after them the words *me, us, him, them, &c.*

**Common Nouns** denote a whole kind or species, and are applicable to any individual of that class ; as, *man, city*.

Proper nouns are classed as common nouns when they are employed to describe more than one individual. Thus, "*the Howards*," "*the Stewarts*," being descriptive of classes of individuals, may be considered as common nouns. It is the same in such expressions as "He is *the Cicero* of the age ; he is a *Hercules*."

The names of qualities or properties, conceived as existing apart from the substances to which they belong, are usually distinguished by the name of **Abstract Nouns** ; as, *hardness, gentleness*.

2. **Adjective** is the name given to all words which are joined with a noun, to express some quality assigned to it ; as, *good, tall*.

Thus, when we use the noun *man* without any restricting word, the term is indefinite, being applicable to any individual of the human species ; but when we prefix the term *tall*, and say "*tall man*," we limit the meaning to an individual distinguished by the property of *tallness* : Accordingly, the limiting or modifying word *tall* is an **adjective**.

An adjective expresses the property of a thing, not simply, but as conjoined with that thing ; it is therefore never used without a noun being either expressed or understood.

Thus, *tallness, goodness, greatness*, and the like, which express properties or qualities simply, are not adjectives, but **abstract nouns** ; though *tall, good, and great*, which qualify nouns, and cannot be used without them either expressed or implied, are **adjectives**.

It is more than probable that all adjectives were originally nouns. Accordingly, some languages are said to have no adjectives ; and, in our own language, nouns are sometimes used adjectively ; as, *gold ring, coal fire, sea water, ship stores*, which are all common usages.

Some words are still used both as nouns and as adjectives ; as, *Christian, cold, cunning, divine, evil, liquid, missionary, original, private, ritual.*

Adjectives may be divided into two classes : *Adjectives denoting quality*, and *Adjectives denoting number*.

*Adjectives denoting quality* are such as *good, bad, large, great.*

*Adjectives denoting number*, or *Numerals*, are such as either directly point out the number of their nouns, or define them with somewhat like numerical exactness.

Adjectives denoting quality are easily distinguishable from other words, being always equivalent to the name of the quality with *of* prefixed ; but the *numerals*, or adjectives *of number*, being of two kinds, and in some instances extremely general and indefinite in their signification, can only be known from other words by a minute acquaintance with their uses.

The *Numerals*, which strictly signify number, are of two kinds, the *Cardinals* and *Ordinals*.

The *Cardinals* are those which denote number in general ; as, *one, two, three.*

The *Ordinals* are those which denote number in succession ; as, *first, second, third.*

The *Numerals* which define with only somewhat like numerical exactness, are *a, an ; the, this, that, yon ; any, all ; many, few ; several, some ; each, every ; either, neither ; both, only ; other, another ; no, none.*

*A* or *an* is often called the *indefinite Article* ; and *the* the *definite Article*.

*A* and *an* were originally *ae* and *ane*, and were probably used at first simply to convey the idea of unity ; as, *ae man, ana ox.* They still express the idea of unity, as is evident from their seldom being joined with a noun which signifies more



**Common Nouns** denote a whole kind or species, and are applicable to any individual of that class ; as, *man*, *city*.

Proper nouns are classed as common nouns when they are employed to describe more than one individual. Thus, "*the Howards*," "*the Stewarts*," being descriptive of classes of individuals, may be considered as common nouns. It is the same in such expressions as "He is *the Cicero* of the age ; he is a *Hercules*."

The names of qualities or properties, conceived as existing apart from the substances to which they belong, are usually distinguished by the name of **Abstract Nouns** ; as, *hardness*, *gentleness*.

2. **Adjective** is the name given to all words which are joined with a noun, to express some quality assigned to it ; as, *good*, *tall*.

Thus, when we use the noun *man* without any restricting word, the term is indefinite, being applicable to any individual of the human species ; but when we prefix the term *tall*, and say "*tall man*," we limit the meaning to an individual distinguished by the property of *tallness* : Accordingly, the limiting or modifying word *tall* is an **adjective**.

An adjective expresses the property of a thing, not simply, but as conjoined with that thing ; it is therefore never used without a noun being either expressed or understood.

Thus, *tallness*, *goodness*, *greatness*, and the like, which express properties or qualities simply, are not adjectives, but **abstract nouns** ; though *tall*, *good*, and *great*, which qualify nouns, and cannot be used without them either expressed or implied, are **adjectives**.

It is more than probable that all adjectives were originally nouns. Accordingly, some languages are said to have no adjectives ; and, in our own language, nouns are sometimes used adjectively ; as, *gold* ring, *coal* fire, *sea* water, *ship* stores, which are all common usages.

Some words are still used both as nouns and as adjectives ; as, *Christian, cold, cunning, divine, evil, liquid, missionary, original, private, ritual.*

Adjectives may be divided into two classes : *Adjectives denoting quality*, and *Adjectives denoting number.*

*Adjectives denoting quality* are such as *good, bad, large, great.*

*Adjectives denoting number*, or *Numerals*, are such as either directly point out the number of their nouns, or define them with somewhat like numerical exactness.

Adjectives denoting quality are easily distinguishable from other words, being always equivalent to the name of the quality with *of* prefixed ; but the *numerals*, or adjectives of number, being of two kinds, and in some instances extremely general and indefinite in their signification, can only be known from other words by a minute acquaintance with their uses.

The *Numerals*, which strictly signify number, are of two kinds, the *Cardinals* and *Ordinals*.

The *Cardinals* are those which denote number in general ; as, *one, two, three.*

The *Ordinals* are those which denote number in succession ; as, *first, second, third.*

The *Numerals* which define with only somewhat like numerical exactness, are *a, an ; the, this, that, you ; any, all ; many, few ; several, some ; each, every ; either, neither ; both, only ; other, another ; no, none.*

*A* or *an* is often called the *indefinite Article* ; and *the* the *definite Article*.

*A* and *an* were originally *ae* and *ane*, and were probably used at first simply to convey the idea of unity ; as, *ae man, ana ox.* They still express the idea of unity, as is evident from their seldom being joined with a noun which signifies more

5. THE PRONOUN.—Which of the *Personal Pronouns* correspond to the *Possessive Pronouns*, their, my, our, your, thy, her, respectively?

What nouns do the *Pronouns*, he, she, his, her, it, and they, refer to respectively in the following sentences?

The huntsman wished *his* dogs to take the water. At first *they* refused: but at last *they* crossed it, *he* following on horseback.

The street was originally named after a lady of rank; but, as *she* did not choose that *it* should bear *her* name, the name was changed into that of a famous general: *he*, however, was never consulted in the matter.

Point out the *Antecedents* or *Correlatives* of who, which, that, and as, in the following sentences:—

The bark *which* is stripped from the oak is used in tanning leather. Some oaks are said to be older than the oldest man *that* ever lived. The fruit *which* grows upon this tree is called an acorn. There are men in some countries *who* eat acorns; in this country, the only animals *that* now feed upon them are pigs and poultry: though such men *as* originally peopled Britain were glad to use them.

Supply the blanks in the following passage with *Relative Pronouns*, distinguishing when *who* and when *which* ought to be used:—

The fuel \_\_\_\_\_ is most commonly used in the British islands is coal. It is dug out of deep pits in the earth by men \_\_\_\_\_ are called miners. Long ago, the foul air collects under ground used sometimes to be set on fire by the lamps of the miners, and to blow up, to the great hazard of the lives of all \_\_\_\_\_ were in the mine; but this has seldom occurred since the celebrated Sir Humphry Davy, \_\_\_\_\_ devoted much attention to the subject, found out a kind of gauze keeps in the flame, and prevents it from igniting the foul air.

Supply the blanks in the following story with appropriate *Pronouns*:—

Three friends entered into partnership: Charles gave the shop as his contribution to \_\_\_\_\_ general stock; David agreed to manage the business, thus giving \_\_\_\_\_ time and talents as

contribution; Edward advanced the money to buy goods for filling . After carrying on the business for some time in a manner that reflected credit on the manager, and brought gain to all, suddenly lost both shop and goods by a fire that broke out in neighbourhood; and it came to be a question among the partners *which* of had incurred the greatest loss. "We have all lost equally," argued David, "for each contributed equally to general stock, and all is gone." "Not at all," replied Charles; "I have lost shop, certainly, and Edward has lost money; but , David, have lost only your time; talents for management, formed the other part of your contribution, still remain unimpaired; nay, are improved by the exercise they have received in conducting business. You are therefore not to be considered as a loser to the same extent as Edward and have been, but rather as one is a debtor to the firm." It is for the ingenious reader to determine which of the parties had the advantage in this argument.

**6. THE VERB.**—*Distinguish Nouns, Adjectives denoting quality, Adjectives of number, Pronouns, and Verbs, in the following sentences :—*

John is a tall boy.

Our master strikes the table.

That horse gallops.

The sun sets.

Our hearts are deceitful.

The diligent scholar surpasses his competitors, and stands  
dux in his class.

An idle boy grieves his teacher, disappoints his parents,  
and ruins himself.

I love my parents, my preceptor, and my lesson; you are  
idle, you neglect your duty, you deserve punishment.

*Distinguish Verbs from Adjectives in the following sentences :—*

The meadows are joyful, the little hills rejoice.

The shadows of the long night lengthen about us.

We mourn at the mournful tidings.

The whole family are sad; their sadness saddens us.

*Distinguish between Transitive and Intransitive Verbs in the following instances :—*

Afflict, arise, begin, beg, bite, bleed, cleave, creep, drink, eat, fall, fly, go, grow, hang, hear, know, lie, ride, ring, rise, run, scatter, seek, sell, shave, shine, sink, smite, stride, strew, swim, take, tear, think, throw, walk, wax, weave, weep, win, word, write.

*Supply Verbs in the following sentences :—*

All animals utter sounds appropriate to their respective natures. Men ; lions ; horses ; dogs ; wolves ; serpents ; magpies ; the birds of song .

We with the merry ; we with the sad : good news us ; heavy tidings us with grief.

The angels of heaven the God whom they worship ; their piety, fed by the presence of its object, with a pure and ardent flame. We, who dwell in this lower world, an invisible God. From us the Almighty himself. Behold, we go forward, but he not there ; and backward, but we him not. But though God be unseen by us, he not far from every one of us. He every where present throughout his vast dominions. He you at this moment. He the voice with which I now you. He to the prayers which you prefer to heaven. He the praises which, with united hearts, you render to his name. Wherever you , you may worship a present God. His eye you when in society and when in solitude. In the stillness of the night he around your bed. When in the smiling fields, admiring his works, he your tribute of praise.

*In the following sentences, distinguish when the word in italics is a Noun, when an Adjective, and when a Verb :—*

Thy friends are in the garden ; they *walk* from *walk* to *walk*.

So great is the *heat* given out by these burning pines, that they *heat* the whole surrounding air.

The *fight* still continues ; they breathed a little, but now they *fight* again.

So rich and fragrant, the poets tell us, is the *smell* of the spicy fields of Arabia Felix, that the mariners who navigate the coasts *smell* them far out at sea.

This *damp* night might be expected to cast a *damp* over us; yet we *damp* not our ardour.

A *calm* has succeeded the storm, and again the ocean is *calm*: It is proper that we *calm* our fears also.

If you *labour* diligently, you will not lose your *labour*.

They *hope* to *gain* wealth, and the *hope* of *gain* sweetens labour.

They are of humble *rank*; but they *rank* high in the estimation of their fellows.

He should *moderate* his wishes, and be content with *moderate* gains.

7. ADVERB.—*In each of the following sentences there is an Adverb: point it out, and state, in each case, which part of speech it qualifies, whether an Adjective, Verb, or other Adverb:—*

The master twice corrected John.

Your lesson is not sufficiently prepared.

The boy who lately entered school is now at the head of his class.

You act foolishly; your conduct is truly mournful.

That story is not true.

That is not very wisely said; you certainly deserve punishment.

This is too bad; such misconduct will very speedily find you out.

8. Sentences in which all the parts of speech occur, to be parsed:—

God bestowed on man the faculty of speech for great and important purposes; but, alas! we frequently pervert it to the worst purposes.

Alexander the Great had a high esteem for knowledge and learning. He used to say, "He was more obliged to Aristotle, his tutor, for his learning, than to Philip, his father, for his life!" O what a pity he devoted his life so little to the learning he so greatly loved!

The tongue of the slanderer is a fire, which blackens whatever it touches,—which directs its fury on the good grain equally as on the chaff,—which, wherever it rages, produces nothing but devastation and ruin. O how vile a character is the slanderer! The tongue is an inestimable blessing; but he perverts and prostitutes it.

Words descriptive of natural sounds generally bear some resemblance in their sound to what they represent. We call a certain bird the cuckoo, from the sound which it emits. We say of one sort of wind, it whistles; of another, it roars. We say of serpents, they hiss; of flies, they buzz; of falling timber, it crashes. Of the stream we say, it flows; of the hail, it rattles: In all which instances there is obviously a manifest resemblance between the word and the thing signified.

At noontide hour,

The imprison'd inmates of the school rush forth  
And sport the happy interval away.  
Upon the sward they gaily spread their stores,  
And, happy! feast upon the simple fare.  
In midst of them poor Redbreast hops unharm'd,  
For they have read, or heard and wept to hear,  
The story of the Children in the Wood,  
And many a crumb to Robin now they throw.

O Caledonia! stern and wild,  
Meet nurse for a poetic child!  
Land of brown heath and shaggy wood,  
Land of the mountain and the flood,  
Land of my sires! what mortal hand  
Can e'er untie the filial band  
That knits me to thy rugged strand!

9. *Instances of the same word used as different parts of speech:—*

My book is *as* good, *as* large, and *as* carefully kept, *as* any in the school. It is such *as* the master is sure to approve.

Many men are obliged to be content with such *accommodation* *as* they can get, not such *as* they wish.

He hath not grieved me *but* in part. He has injured nothing belonging to me *but* the basket; *but* he has destroyed the whole of your fishing-tackle.

ill take *either* road at your pleasure. *Either* you or I do it.

you say that *neither* is attentive? *neither* the boy nor I?

cannot go beyond the word of the Lord, to do *less* or *more*.

the sun sinks, the stars appear *more* and *more*; but

stars are invisible than all that yet appear.

will love *most* who has *most* forgiven.

id *that* book again.

id the book *that* I gave you.

id *that* book, *that* you may become wise.

ill you *that that* man is innocent.

essed is the man *that* considereth the poor.

*that* you may live, and live *that* you may do good.

give us our trespass, *as* we forgive them that trespass  
t us.

*if* you should have reason to mourn, is grievous to me.

*if* star *that* shines above us, for *as* little *as* it seems to be,

er than *either* the moon or the earth: it is *but* a spark-

iamond in apparent magnitude; *but* in real magnitude,

obably also in use, it is a world.

## II. INFLECTION OF WORDS.

*Inflection* is the name given to those changes of  
nation which words undergo to express their  
is relations.

is, *s* in boys, *er* in harder, *se* in whose, *ed* in killed, are  
ctions of boy, hard, who, and kill.

ctions, though now so incorporated with words as not  
used apart from them, were originally separate words  
nant of the circumstances intended.

parts of speech which admit of inflection are  
*Noun*, the *Adjective*, the *Pronoun*, and the



## INFLECTION OF NOUNS.

Nouns admit of inflection to express *Number*, *Gender*, and *Case*.

## I. NUMBER.

*Number* is that inflection of nouns by which we signify whether we intend one or more than one.

Only *Common* Nouns, or such as are applicable to more than one individual, admit of number.

There are two Numbers, the *Singular* and the *Plural*.

The *Singular* expresses only one of a class; the *Plural*, any number more than one.

The singular is always expressed by the noun in its simple form.

The plural is generally expressed by the noun, with the addition of *s* or *es*, according as the one or the other best coalesces with the last letter or syllable.

The nouns which take *es* are chiefly those which end in *x*, *ch* soft, *sh*, *ss*, and *o*, preceded by a consonant; \* as, fox, foxes; church, churches; brush, brushes; class, classes; hero, heroes. *O* pure, that is, *o* preceded by a vowel, and *ch* hard, take *s* only; as, folio, folios; patriarch, patriarchs.

1. The termination *f* or *fe* is often changed into *ves*; as, calf, calves; knife, knives.

The following words, however, follow the general rule, viz. brief, chief, fief, grief, handkerchief; hoof, proof, reproof, roof; dwarf, scarf, wharf; gulf; turf; cliff, sheriff, skiff, whiff; cuff, muff, puff, ruff, snuff, stuff; fife, strife; safe.

2. *V* preceded by a consonant is changed into *ies*; as, city, cities; but *y* preceded by a vowel follows the general rule, as also *y* in proper names used as *common* nouns, though preceded by a consonant; thus, joy, joys, Henry, the Henrys.

---

\* Modern usage is rather in favour of nouns in *o*, though preceded by a *consonant*, following the general rule. Thus, the plurals of canto, grotto, junto, portico, quarto, solo, tyro, are now generally written cantos, &c.

3. Some nouns take the Saxon termination *en* in the formation of the plural ; as,

Alderman	Aldermen	Ox	Oxen
Child	Children	Statesman	Statesmen
Footman	Footmen	Woman	Women
Man	Men		

4. Some vary the plural to express a difference of meaning.

Thus, *brother* makes *brothers* when denoting sons of the same parent, and *brethren* when denoting persons of the same society or profession ; *die*, a stamp for coining, makes *dies* ; *die*, a little cube used in games, *dice* ; *genius* makes *geniuses* when signifying persons of genius, *genii*, when denoting ærial spirits ; *index* makes *indexes* when it expresses a table of contents, and *indices* when it denotes the exponent of an algebraic quantity ; *penny* makes *pennies*, when it is used for real coins, *pence* for their value in computation.\*

5. Nouns which have been adopted without alteration from foreign languages generally retain their original plurals.

The principal words of this class are the following :—

FROM THE GREEK.

Antithesis	Antitheses	Ellipsis	Ellipses
Automaton	Automata	Hypothesis	Hypotheses
Basis	Bases	Metamorphosis	Metamorphoses
Criterion	Criteria	Phenomenon	Phenomena
Crisis	Crises	Thesis	Theses

FROM THE LATIN.

Animalculum	Animalcula	Axis	Axes
Apex	Apices	Calx	Calces
Appendix	Appendices	Datum	Data
Arcanum	Arcana	Desideratum	Desiderata

---

\* To this list it is common to add *fish*, which is said to make *fish* in the plural when quantity is to be denoted, *fishes* when we speak of number ; and *pea*, which is said to make *peas* to signify the seeds as distinct objects, *pease* the seeds in a mass. But it is probably better to consider *fish* when it signifies quantity, and *pease*, as collective nouns singular.

Efflatium	Effluvia	Medium	Media
Erratum	Errata	Memorandum	Memoranda
Focus	Foci	Radius	Radii
Genus	Genera	Stimulus	Stimuli
Ignis-fatuus	Ignes-fatui	Stratum	Strata
Lamina	Lamine	Vertex	Vertices
Magus	Magi	Vortex	Vortices

## FROM THE HEBREW.

Cherub	Cherubim*	Seraph	Seraphim
--------	-----------	--------	----------

## FROM THE FRENCH.

Beau	Beaux	Monsieur	Messieurs
------	-------	----------	-----------

## FROM THE ITALIAN.

Bandit	} Banditti	Dilettante	Dilettanti
Banditto		Virtuoso	Virtuosi

6. Some nouns are entirely anomalous in the formation of their plurals. Thus :—

Foot	Feet	Mouse	Mice
Goose	Geese	Sow	Swine
Louse	Lice	Tooth	Teeth

7. Some nouns are used alike in both numbers ; as, *deer*, *hose*, *sheep*, *swine*.

*Proper* names have necessarily no plural ; but there are also some *common* names which want the plural. Of this kind are names of grains ; as, *rye*, *wheat* ; names of metals ; as, *iron*, *gold* ; names of fossils ; as, *marl*, *clay* ; and names of abstract and moral qualities ; as, *gravity*, *benevolence*.†

There are some common nouns, on the other hand, which have no singular ; for example, nouns expressive of what nature or art has made double ; as *scissors*, *snuffers* ; and nouns

\* “ *Cherubim* and *seraphim* are real Hebrew plurals ; but such is the propensity in men to form regular inflections in language, that these words are used as the singular, with regular plurals, *cherubims*, *seraphims*. In like manner, the Hebrew singulars *cherub* and *seraph* have obtained regular plurals.”—WEBSTER.

† It is to be observed, however, that nouns of the above classes take a plural to express *varieties* of the substances denoted by them. Thus, we can say, *wheats*, *gold*, *clays*, *gravities*, when we wish to describe different kinds of wheat, &c.

ptive of objects which are not easily conceived without a reference to a plurality of parts; as, *anna's, archives, vespers*. There are also some nouns having a plural termination, from their being expressive of either unity or plurality, of being used in either number, according to the view or meaning present to the mind of the writer or speaker who employs them. The following are those most commonly used:—

ns	Hydrostatics	Metaphysics	Pneumatics
tends	Hysterics	News	Politics
liards	Mathematics	Odds	Riches
nomics	Means	Optics	Statistics
ics	Measles	Pains	Tactics
raulics	Mechanics	Physics	

## II. GENDER.

*Gender* is that inflection of nouns by which we express distinction of sex.

There are three Genders,—the *Masculine*, the *Feminine*, and the *Neuter*.

*Masculine* distinguishes male animals; the *neuter*, females; the *Neuter*, things destitute of

sex. Here are only two sexes, there ought to be but two genders—the *masculine* and the *feminine*. But it has been convenient to add a third, the *neuter*.<sup>a</sup> This word is *neither*, and therefore intimates that the objects to

---

things inanimate are considered as neuter, except in cases where, by an easy analogy, the imagination conceives of them as living, and assigns sex to them. This mode of giving life and sex to things inanimate is nearly peculiar to our language, and one of its striking beauties. But it is not easy to reduce the language on this point to fixed rules. Indeed, fancy, without nature or reason, may be traced in the regulation of the gender, and the same object may be found described sometimes as masculine and sometimes of another. The nearest approach to regularity of usage is in the words, *sun, death, time*, names of persons, which take the masculine; and in the words, *moon, ship, earth*, which take the feminine gender.

which it is applied are neither of the masculine nor of the feminine gender.

The English is almost the only language which, in the distribution of gender, follows the order of nature.

Some nouns, as *parent*, *cousin*, and the like, which are applicable to either sex, are said to be of the common gender.\*

There are three modes of distinguishing sex.

1. The most common mode is by employing a change of termination to express the feminine gender.

The feminine terminations most frequently used are *ess*, *ix*, *a*, *ina*, and *ine*.

Originally, the termination *ess* was simply added to the masculine; but, latterly, the feminine thus formed has, for convenience of utterance, been variously contracted.

The following words still retain the whole masculine :—

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
Author	Authoress	Mayor	Mayoress
Baron	Baroness	Patron	Patroness
Count	Countess	Peer	Peeress
Dauphin	Dauphiness	Poet	Poetess
Deacon	Deaconess	Priest	Priestess
Giant	Giantess	Prior	Prioress
Heir	Heiress	Prophet	Prophetess
Host	Hostess	Shepherd	Shepherdess
Jew	Jewess	Tutor	Tutoress
Lion	Lioness	Viscount	Viscountess

The following have undergone contraction :—

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
Abbot	Abbess†	Actor	Actress

\* The appellation “common” gender is sufficiently descriptive of such a word as *parents* (in the plural), which necessarily includes both the masculine and the feminine. But for the singular *parent*, and for such words as *cousin*, &c., “either” gender would be a more correct appellation.

† These feminines must have been originally abbottess, actoress, adultereress, &c. Duchess and marchioness have not been formed from duke and marquis, but from duch and marchion.

<i>asc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
lterer	Adulteress	Hunter	Huntress
assador	Ambassadress	Lad	Lass
ter	Arbitress	Marquis	Marchioness
factor	Benefactress	Master	Mistress
ter	Chantress	Protector	Protectress
luctor	Conductress	Seamster	Seamstress
e	Duchess	Songster	Songstress
tor	Electress	Sorcerer	Sorceress
eror	Empress	Tiger	Tigress
rnor	Governess	Traitor	Traitress

The words that distinguish the feminine by the termination *ix* are of Latin origin. Thus :—

<i>asc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
ministrator	Administratrix	Fornicator	Fornicatrix
ctor	Directrix	Heritor	Heritrix
utor	Executrix	Testator	Testatrix

Those that express the feminine by the terminations *a*, *z*, and *ine*, are also of foreign origin, and are few in number. Thus :—

<i>asc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
	Czarina	Margrave	Margravine
	Heroine	Sultan	Sultana
lgrave	Landgravine		

Distinction of sex is also expressed by a different word being employed to denote the feminine. Thus :—

<i>asc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
	Belle	Earl	Countess
	Sow	Father	Mother
	Girl	Gaffer	Gammer
egroom	Bride	Gander	Goose
her	Sister	Hart	Roe
	Doe	Horse	Mare
	Cow	Husband	Wife
ock	Heifer	King	Queen
	Hen	Lord	Lady
	Filly	Man	Woman
	Bitch	Monk	Nun
e	Duck	Milter	Spawner

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
Nephew	Niece	Stag	Hind
Ram	Ewe	Uncle	Aunt
Sloven	Slut	Widower	Widow
Son	Daughter	Wizard	Witch

3. In many cases, where the same word is employed to express both sexes, another word indicative of sex is prefixed when accuracy of distinction is necessary.

Thus,

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
He-goat	She-goat	Cock-sparrow	Hen-sparrow
Man-servant	Maid-servant	Male-child	Female-child

### III. CASE.

*Case* is the change which nouns undergo for the purpose of expressing their relations to other words.

It is convenient to regard the Cases as three in number,—the *Nominative*, *Possessive*, and *Objective*.

As the only relation of nouns which is expressed in English by a change of termination is that of ownership or possession, there are, strictly speaking, only two cases, the noun in its simple form, and the noun with the possessive termination; as, *boy*, *boy's*.

The noun is in the *Nominative* case when it is the name of the person or thing which *acts* or *is spoken of*.

The noun is in the *Possessive* case when it expresses the relation of ownership or possession.

The noun is in the *Objective* case when it is the name of the person or thing which is the object or end of an action or movement.

Thus, in the sentence—"James strikes John's horse," *James*, as the agent, is in the nominative case; *John's*, as expressing the relation of ownership, is in the possessive; and *horse*, being the name of the object,\* is in the objective.

---

\* "When a noun *does* any thing it is called the *agent*, and when something is done to it, it is called the *object*."

*Nominative* and *Objective* are both expressed by the noun in its simple form.

*Possessive* is formed by adding to the *Nominative* with a prefixed apostrophe ('s)\* for the singular, and by adding an annexed apostrophe (') for plural.

When the noun ends in *s*, *ss*, *ce*, or any other termination which does not easily admit of a hissing sound after it, the possessive is formed by simply annexing the apostrophe without the letter *s*; as, "for righteousness' sake, for conscience' sake."

The possessive plural is also formed in the same manner, as, "on eagles' wings."

A noun is thus declined:—

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> Father	Fathers	<i>Nom.</i> Man	Men
<i>s.</i> Father's	Fathers'	<i>Poss.</i> Man's	Men's
Father	Fathers	<i>Obj.</i> Man	Men

### INFLECTION OF ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives denoting quality do not admit of inflection to express *Number*, *Gender*, and *Case*.

Only numeral adjectives which admit of inflection to express *Number* are, *this*, *that*, *other*, which have plurals, *these*, *those*, *others*.

Only adjective which admits of variation to express *Case*, is the numeral *another*, which has a possessive singular, *another's*.

It has been supposed that the termination ('s) of the English possessive is a contraction for the possessive pronoun *his*. Thus, "John's book" is supposed to be an abbreviation of "John his book."

But this opinion is evidently erroneous. The termination does not always be resolved into the pronoun *his*. We cannot resolve "queen's crown" into "queen *his* crown," or "children's bread" into "children *his* bread." The fact seems to be, that the possessive termination is one of the parts of our language which have preserved from the Saxon. The casual termination of the Saxon possessive is *es* or *is*; as appears in such phrases as "at sight," "king's crown." The progress of change in the termination seems to have been *es*, *is*, 's.



The inflection peculiar to adjectives is that which they admit for the purpose of expressing comparison.

But even this is restricted to such as denote qualities susceptible of increase or decrease.

There are three Degrees of Comparison,—the *Positive*, the *Comparative*, and the *Superlative*.

The *Positive* is the adjective in its simple state.

The *Comparative* denotes a greater degree of the quality than that which is expressed by the adjective in its ordinary form.

The *Superlative* denotes its greatest degree of intensity.

The *Comparative* is generally formed by adding *r* or *er* to the *Positive*; as, safe, safer; tall, taller.

The *Superlative* is generally formed by adding *st* or *est* to the *Positive*; as, safe, safest; tall, tallest.

The following adjectives are compared irregularly:—

Good	better	best
Bad	worse	worst
Evil		
Ill		
Little	less	least
Many	more	most
Much		
Far	farther	farthest
Fore	former	foremost or first
Late	later	latest or last
Near	nearer	nearest or next
Old	older or elder	oldest or eldest

Adjectives are also compared by prefixing the words *more* and *most* to the *Positive*; as, gentle, *more* gentle, *most* gentle.

It would seem from the diversity of usage that prevails, that it is left to the ear and taste to determine whether the comparison should be expressed in any particular instance by a change of termination, or by prefixing *more* and *most*.

Adjectives of one syllable, and dissyllable adjectives in *y*,

*le* pure, are generally compared in the former way ; natives of more than two syllables, and dissyllables that do not end in *y* or *le* pure, in the latter.

Some adjectives form their superlative by adding *most* to the comparative ; as, *nether*, *nethermost* ; *lower*, *lowermost* ; *few* by adding *most* either to the positive or to the comparative ; as, *hind*, *hindmost*, or *hindermost*.

There is also a species of comparison made by adding the *h*, which lessens the signification of the positive ; as, *blackish* ; *white*, *whitish*.\*

In this form, the adjective is called a *diminutive*.

### INFLECTION OF PRONOUNS.

Pronouns which admit of inflection are the *Personal*, the *Relative*, and the *Reciprocal*.

Personal Pronouns, being a species of nouns, are distinguished by *Number*, *Gender*, and *Case*.

They are thus declined :—

<i>Pers. Masc. or Fem.</i>		<i>Second Pers. Masc. or Fem.</i>	
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>I</i>	<i>We†</i>	<i>Nom. Thou or you</i>	<i>Ye or you†</i>
<i>Mine</i>	<i>Ours</i>	<i>Poss. Thine or yours</i>	<i>Yours</i>
<i>Me</i>	<i>Us</i>	<i>Obj. Thee or you</i>	<i>You</i>

<i>Third Person Masc.</i>		<i>Third Person Fem.</i>	
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>He</i>	<i>They</i>	<i>Nom. She</i>	<i>They</i>
<i>His</i>	<i>Theirs</i>	<i>Poss. Hers</i>	<i>Theirs</i>
<i>Him</i>	<i>Them</i>	<i>Obj. Her</i>	<i>Them</i>

The words *prior*, *exterior*, *inferior*, *superior*, *ulterior*, &c., have the form of Latin comparatives, are not to be considered as comparatives in English. Besides wanting the termination *ius*, the English comparative, they are not followed by *than*, its distinguishing mark.

The idea expressed by the plural of *I* and *thou* is not the same as expressed by the plural of simple nouns. In nouns, the singular is equivalent to the singular repeated. Thus, *boys* is equal to *boy + boy*, &c. indefinitely. But *we* is not equivalent to *I + I*, &c., but to *I + others* joined with *myself*. In the same manner, *ye* or *you* is not equivalent to *thou + thou + thou*, but to *thou + others* joined with *you*.

## THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>It</i>	<i>They</i>
<i>Poss.</i>	<i>Its</i>	<i>Theirs</i>
<i>Obj.</i>	<i>It</i>	<i>Them*</i>

The Relatives *who* and *which* are thus declined:—

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>		<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Who</i>	<i>Who</i>	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Which</i>	<i>Which</i>
<i>Poss.</i>	<i>Whose</i>	<i>Whose</i>	<i>Poss.</i>	<i>Whose†</i>	<i>Whose</i>
<i>Obj.</i>	<i>Whom</i>	<i>Whom</i>	<i>Obj.</i>	<i>Which</i>	<i>Which</i>

The Relatives *that* and *as* admit of no variation.

The Reciprocal Pronoun *self* has in the plural *selves*.

## INFLECTION OF VERBS.

Verbs admit of inflection to express *Number*, *Person*, and *Time*.

Verbs have two Numbers,—the *Singular* and the *Plural*; as, *he loves*, *they love*.

Verbs have three Persons; as, *I love*, *thou lovest*, *he loves*.

Verbs have two *Tenses* or *Times*, the *Present* and the *Past*; as, *I love*, *I loved*.

The present tense denotes that the verbal action or state is in present time.

The past tense denotes that the verbal action or state is in past time.

The only other variation which verbs undergo is the addition of *ing*, and *d* or *ed*, to form the *Imperfect* and *Perfect†* Participles.

\* The oblique cases of the personal pronouns are so different from some instances from the nominative that they must have originally belonged to different words.

† Whatever grammarians may say, it does not admit of doubt that *whose*, as the possessive of *which*, is the general usage of the language.

‡ These participles are commonly called the *present* and *past* participles; but as they contain in themselves no expression

the *Imperfect Participle* denotes that the verbal action or state is proceeding ; as, *loving, walking*.

the *Perfect Participle* denotes that the verbal action or state is finished ; as, *loved, walked*.

In strictness, the participles are not parts of the verb, as they do not imply affirmation, but are merely adjectives.

The verb, in its simple form, without the restriction of number, person, or tense, is called *Infinitive* ;\* as, *to love*.

The preposition *to* being generally prefixed to the verb in this form, is called the *sign of the Infinitive*.

In the essence of the verb consists in affirmation, the *Infinitive* is not, strictly speaking, a part of the verb any more than the participles : it is more properly a noun, and it is called the *noun or name of the verb*.

but simply notify whether the verbal action be unfinished or finished, they are more correctly named, as above, the *imperfect* and *perfect* participles. The following examples will show that participles do not contain in themselves any notification of the object which they refer, but that their statements are to be estimated either from the verb with which they stand connected, or from some circumstance given in the context :—" I see you *writing*," " I saw you *writing*," " *to-morrow* I shall see you *write*," " He is *conquered*," " he was *conquered*," " *next day* he will be *conquered*."

In most grammars the verb is divided into what are called *Modes*,—that is, forms " showing the manner in which the verbal action is represented ;" and these moods are commonly to be four in number,—the *Indicative*, the *Potential*, the *Imperative*, and the *Infinitive*. Such a division of the verb the author of the present Manual has abandoned ; being persuaded, in concert with many late grammarians, that the verb in all its parts is either *indicative* or *assertive*. He has, however, retained the names *Indicative* and *Infinitive* (but without the addition, *Mood*) as ancient appellations for two particular parts of the verb ; and added *Potential* as an appropriate name for those tenses in the verb which *indicate* or assert *power* and *liberty*. The mode of Grammars,—the *Subjunctive*,—is now almost universally rejected ; it being manifest that, wherever the form so called is used, the peculiarity is occasioned not by the fact of its being *subjoined* to *if*, and similar conjunctions, but by the character of a thing intended to be expressed.

The verb in its simple form is called *imperative* when it expresses a command, request, or direction; as, "*Love the Lord, all ye his saints;*" "*Do good and communicate.*"

Verbs, in respect of inflection, are divided into *Regular*, *Irregular*, and *Defective*.

Verbs are *Regular* when the past tense and perfect participle are formed by adding *d* or *ed* to the present; as,

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Perfect Part.</i>
Love	Loved	Loved
Walk	Walked	Walked

Verbs are *Irregular* when the past tense and perfect participle are formed in any other way than by adding *d* or *ed* to the present; as,

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Perfect Part.</i>
Write	Wrote	Written
Do	Did	Done

Verbs are *Defective* when they want one or more of these three parts; as,

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Perfect Part.</i>
May	Might	
Must	Must	

*Regular* Verbs are thus inflected:—

#### TO LOVE.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>
Love	Loved	Loved

#### *Present Tense.*

##### *Singular.*

1st Per. I love

2d Per. Thou lovest or you love

3d Per. He, she, or it loves or loveth

##### *Plural.*

1st Per. We love

2d Per. Ye or you love

3d Per. They love

#### *Past Tense.*

1. I loved

2. Thou lovedst or you loved

3. He, she, or it loved

1. We loved

2. Ye or you loved

3. They loved

*Participles.**Imperfect, Loving. Perfect, Loved.**Irregular Verbs are thus inflected:—*

## TO WRITE.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>
Write	Wrote	Written

*Present Tense.**Singular.**Plural.*

- |   |                           |
|---|---------------------------|
| 1. I write  | 1. We write               |
| 2. Thou writest <i>or</i> you write               | 2. Ye <i>or</i> you write |
| 3. He, she, <i>or</i> it writes <i>or</i> writeth | 3. They write             |

*Past Tense.*

- |                                     |                           |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. I wrote                          | 1. We wrote               |
| 2. Thou wrotest <i>or</i> you wrote | 2. Ye <i>or</i> you wrote |
| 3. He, she, <i>or</i> it wrote      | 3. They wrote             |

*Participles.**Imperfect, Writing. Perfect, Written.*

There are, at least, one hundred and seventy irregular verbs in the English language; but there is some uniformity even in their irregularities.

Some of the irregularities are mere abbreviations; as, *crept* for *creeped*, *left* for *leaved*, *had* for *haved*.

Some reject *ed* in the past tense and perfect participle, from the difficulty of making this termination coalesce with the verb in its simple form; as,

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>
Cost	cost	cost
Put	put	put
Spread	spread	spread

Many retain the old participial termination *en* or *n* instead of adopting the modern *ed*; as,

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>
Freeze	froze	frozen
Show	showed	shown
Smite	smote	smitten

Several verbs in *ing* retain the Saxon *ung* in the past tense and perfect participle ; as,

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>
Cling	clung	clung
Fling	flung	flung
Ring	rang or rung	rung

The following is a list of the Irregular Verbs :—

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>
Abide	abode	abode
Am	was	been
Arise	arose	arisen
Awake	awoke or awaked	awaked
Bake	baked	baked or baken
Bear, to bring forth	bore or bare	born
Bear, to carry	bore or bare	borne
Beat	beat	beat or beaten
Become	became	become
Begin	began	begun
Behold	beheld	beheld or beholden
Bend	bent or bended	bent or bended
Bereave	bereft or bereaved	bereft or bereaved
Beseech	besought	besought
Bid	bade or bid	bidden
Bind	bound	bound
Bite	bit	bitten or bit
Bleed	bled	bled
Blow	blew	blown
Break	broke or brake	broken
Breed	bred	bred
Bring	brought	brought
Build	built or builded	built or builded
Burst	burst	burst
Buy	bought	bought
Cast	cast	cast
Catch	caught or catched	caught or catched
Chide	chid	chidden
Choose	chose	chosen
Cleave, to adhere	clave or cleaved	cleaved
Cleave, to split	clove, clave, cleft	cloven or cleft

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Perf. Past.</i>
g	clung	clung
nb	climbed <i>or</i> clomb	climbed
he	clothed <i>or</i> clad	clothed <i>or</i> clad
re	came	come
t	cost	cost
w	crowed <i>or</i> crew	crowed
ep	crept	crept
	cut	cut
e, <i>to venture</i>	durst <i>or</i> dared	dared
l	dealt <i>or</i> dealed	dealt <i>or</i> dealed
	dug <i>or</i> digged	dug <i>or</i> digged
	did	done
w	drew	drawn
nk	drank	drunk <i>or</i> drunken
re	drove	driven
ll	dwelt <i>or</i> dwelled	dwelt <i>or</i> dwelled
	ate	eaten
	fell	fallen
l	fed	fed
	felt	felt
nt	fought	fought
d	found	found
	fled	fled
g	flung	flung
	flew	flown
ear	forbore <i>or</i> forbare	forborn
get	forgot	forgotten <i>or</i> forgot
ake	forsook	forsaken
ze	froze	frozen
	got <i>or</i> gat	gotten <i>or</i> got
	gilt <i>or</i> gilded	gilt <i>or</i> gilded
l	girt <i>or</i> girded	girt <i>or</i> girded
	gave	given
	went	gone
re	graved	graven <i>or</i> graded
d	ground	ground
v	grew	grown
g	hung <i>or</i> hanged	hung <i>or</i> hanged
e	had	had



<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>
Hear	heard	heard
Heave	heaved <i>or</i> hove	heaved <i>or</i> hoven
Help	helped	helped <i>or</i> holpen
Hew	hewed	hewn <i>or</i> hewed
Hide	hid	hidden <i>or</i> hid
Hit	hit	hit
Hold	held	held <i>or</i> holden
Hurt	hurt	hurt
Keep	kept	kept
Kneel	knelt	knelt
Knit	knit <i>or</i> knitted	knit <i>or</i> knitted
Know	knew	known
Lade	laded	laden
Lay	laid	laid
Lead	led	led
Leave	left	left
Lend	lent	lent
Let	let	let
Lie, <i>to lie down</i>	lay	lain <i>or</i> lien
Lift	lifted <i>or</i> lift	lifted <i>or</i> lift
Light	lighted <i>or</i> lit	lighted <i>or</i> lit
Load	loaded	loaden <i>or</i> loaded
Lose	lost	lost
Make	made	made
Mean	meant <i>or</i> meaned	meant <i>or</i> meaned
Meet	met	met
Mow	mowed	mown <i>or</i> mowed
Pay	paid	paid
Put	put	put
Quit	quit <i>or</i> quitted	quit
Read	read	read
Rend	rent	rent
Rid	rid	rid
Ride	rode <i>or</i> rid	ridden <i>or</i> rid
Ring	rung <i>or</i> rang	rung
Rise	rose	risen
Rive	rived	riven
Rot	rotted	rotted <i>or</i> rotten
Run	ran	run

# INFLECTION OF WORDS.

87

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>
r	sawed	sawn or sawed
	said	said
	saw	seen
k	sought	sought
the	seethed or sod	sodden
	sold	sold
d	sent	sent
	set	set
ke	shook	shaken
pe	shaped	shaped or shapen
ve	shaved	shaved or shaven
ar	sheared or shore	shorn
d	shed	shed
ne	shone or shined	shone or shined
w	shewed	shewn
w	showed	shown
e	shod	shod
ot	shot	shot
ink	shrunk or shrank	shrunk
ed	shred	shred
t	shut	shut
g	sung or sang	sung
c	sunk or sank	sunk or sunken
	sat	sitten or sat
	slew	slain
p	slept	slept
e	slid	slidden
g	slung or slang	slung
k	slunk or slank	slunk
	slit or slitted	slit or slitted
te	smote	smitten or smit
	sowed	sown or sowed
ak	spoke or spake	spoken
ed	sped	sped
ad	spent	spent
l	spilt or spilled	spilt or spilled
t	spun or span	spun
	spit or spat	spit or spitten
t	split or splitted	split or splitted
ad	spread	spread

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>
Spring	sprung or sprang	sprung
Stand	stood	stood
Steal	stole	stolen
Stick	stuck	stuck
Sting	stung	stung
Stink	stunk or stank	stunk
Stride	strode or strid	stridden
Strike	struck	struck or stricken
String	strung	strung
Strive	strove	striven
Strew or }	strewed or }	strown or { strewed strowed
Strow }	strowed }	
Swear	swore or aware	sworn
Sweat	sweat	sweat
Sweep	swept	swept
Swell	swelled	swelled or swollen
Swim	swam or swum	swum
Swing	swung or swang	swung
Take	took	taken
Teach	taught	taught
Tear	tore or tare	torn
Tell	told	told
Think	thought	thought
Thrive	throve or thrived	thriven
Throw	threw	thrown
Thrust	thrust	thrust
Tread	trod or trode	trodden
Wax	waxed	waxed or waxen
Wear	wore	worn
Weave	wove	woven
Weep	wept	wept
Win	won	won
Wind	wound or winded	wound
Work	wrought or worked	wrought or worked
Wring	wrung or wringed	wrung or wringed
Write	wrote or writ	written or writ
Writhe	writhed	writhen or writhed

The *Defective* Verbs are the following; and they are generally irregular as well as defective:—

<i>sent.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Perfect Part.</i>
	could	
30		foregone
	might	
	must*	
it	ought*	
h	quoth	
	should	
	would	
	wist	
or wot	wot	

ree of the irregular verbs, *be, do, have*, and four he defective verbs, *shall, will, may, can*, are aps, from the important purposes they serve, of ter use than any other words in the language.

ey are called *Generic Verbs* from the extreme rality of the ideas they express, and to distin- h them from such verbs as *love, write*, which, g expressive of more limited ideas, are called ific Verbs.

*be*, denotes *being* or *existence* in general; as, e *is*," "He *is* old," "It *is* written."

*do*, denotes *action* in general; as, "I *do* wrong," *to write*."

*have*, denotes *possession* in general; as, "I : knowledge," "I *have* written."

The following examples are adduced by Murray as proofs that and *ought* have each a past tense,—“He *must* have been ken,” “These *ought* ye to have done.” Such instances, how- are not decisive of the point, as it is possible that past time is ssed in these examples not by “*must*” and “*ought*,” but by e been” and “have done.” We can say in Latin, “*me ire uit*,” but in English we are under the necessity of connecting te of past time with *ire*, and of saying, “I *must have gone*,” ght to *have gone*.” The following instance seems less objec- le:—“Ought you not to have done it? I *ought*.” The ana- f *should*, which is undoubtedly a *past* tense, and which also : *have* after it, also favours Murray’s view, though it may be bly argued by those who hold the opposite doctrine, that t is itself not unfrequently used in a present sense.

*Shall*, denotes *duty* or *obligation* in general, and, by inference, *futurity*; as, "He *shall* obey me," "I *shall* write to-morrow."

*Will*, denotes *volition* or *intention*, and, by inference, *futurity*; as, "I *will*, be thou whole," "He *will* write to-morrow."

*May*, conveys the idea of *liberty* or *permission*, and, by inference, *contingency*; as, "He *may* go if he will," "He *may* have written or not."

*Can*, has the sense of *is able*, and denotes *power* or *ability* in general; as, "I *can* write, though you cannot."

The *Generic Verbs* are thus inflected:—

#### TO BE.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Perfect Part.</i>
Am	was	been

#### *Present Tense.*

##### *Singular.*

1. I am
2. Thou art or you are
3. He, she, or it is

##### *Plural.*

1. We are
2. Ye or you are
3. They are

#### *Past Tense.*

1. I was
2. Thou wast or you were
3. He, she, or it was

1. We were
2. Ye or you were
3. They were

#### *Past Tense Conditional.*

(When used to assert contingent or conditional existence.\*)

1. I were
2. Thou wert or you were
3. He, she, or it were

1. We were
2. Ye or you were
3. They were

---

\* The verb *to be* is the only one in the English language which has a conditional form. In the case of all other verbs, the form, when it occurs, is purely elliptical. Thus, "If he say so, it is well," is an ellipsis for "If he *shall* say so."

"Though he *slay* me, yet will I trust in him," is an ellipsis for "Though he *should* slay me."

*Participles.**Imperfect, Being. Perfect, Been.**Infinitive.\**

Be or to be.

---

TO DO.*Present.*

Do

*Past.*

did

*Perfect Part.*

done

*Present Tense.**Singular.*

- . I do
- . Thou doest or dost or you do
- . He, she, or it doeth, doth, or does

*Plural.*

- 1. We do
- 2. Ye or you do
- 3. They do

*Past Tense.*

- . I did
- . Thou didst or you did
- . He, she, or it did

- 1. We did
- 2. Ye or you did
- 3. They did

*Participles.**Imperfect, Doing. Perfect, Done.*

---

TO HAVE.*Present.*

Have

*Past.*

had

*Perfect Part.*

had

*Present Tense.**Singular.*

- I have
- Thou hast or you have
- He, she, or it hath or has

*Plural.*

- 1. We have
- 2. Ye or you have
- 3. They have

---

\* The infinitive is given in the conjugation of the verb *to be*, because it is the only instance in which the *infinitive* is different in form from the *present tense*. But it is more than probable that even this verb did not originally furnish an exception to the universal usage of the language. The present tense, *I be, thou beest, &c.*, is used by old writers; and it is still used (with perhaps the exception of *beest*) when doubt or contingency is to be expressed. Thus, "If thou *be* the Son of God, cast thyself down."

*Past Tense.**Singular.*

1. I had
2. Thou hadst *or* you had
3. He, she, *or* it had

*Plural.*

1. We had
2. Ye *or* you had
3. They had

*Participles.*

*Imperfect, Having. Perfect, Had.*

## SHALL.\*

*Present Tense.**Singular.*

1. I shall
2. Thou shalt *or* you shall
3. He, she, *or* it shall

*Plural.*

1. We shall
2. Ye *or* you shall
3. They shall

*Past Tense.*

1. I should
2. Thou shouldst *or* you should
3. He, she, *or* it should

1. We should
2. Ye *or* you should
3. They should

\* *Shall* is a derivative from the Saxon *scéal*, *I owe*, *or I ought*, and signifies "*it is my duty*." It is used in this sense by our old writers; as, for instance, by Chaucer, when he says, "*The faith shall to God*,"—that is, "*The faith I owe to God*;" nor has it ever yet lost its original signification. "*Thou shalt not kill*" is "*the oughtest not to kill*." But as all duties, though present in respect of their obligation, must be future in their performance, so, by a natural transition, this word, which strictly predicates only *present duty*, has come to be used as "*a note of future time*." Hence it is described in the text as expressive of duty, and, by inference, of futurity. *Will*, in like manner, only expresses present intention yet, as the performance of present intention is necessarily future, is employed to note futurity. "*I shall write*," in strictness intimates no more than that it is my present duty to write; but the phrase is universally interpreted as if it meant to intimate that *am to write at some time future*. "*He will write*," in strictness intimates no more than that it is his present intention to write; but the phrase is universally put upon it as upon the other phrase, and the present application of the word *shall* is thereby lost; *shall* is merely future in the other two; with *will* it is not so.

**WILL.**

*Present Tense.*

*Singular.*

- 1. I will
- 2. Thou wilt *or* you will
- 3. He, she, *or* it will

*Plural.*

- 1. We will
- 2. Ye *or* you will
- 3. They will

*Past Tense.*

- 1. I would
- 2. Thou wouldst *or* you would
- 3. He, she, *or* it would

- 1. We would
- 2. Ye *or* you would
- 3. They would

**MAY.**

*Present Tense.*

*Singular.*

- 1. I may
- 2. Thou mayest *or* you may
- 3. He, she, *or* it may

*Plural.*

- 1. We may
- 2. Ye *or* you may
- 3. They may

*Past Tense.*

- 1. I might
- 2. Thou mightest *or* you might
- 3. He, she, *or* it might

- 1. We might
- 2. Ye *or* you might
- 3. They might

**CAN.**

*Present Tense.*

*Singular.*

- 1. I can
- 2. Thou canst *or* you can
- 3. He, she, *or* it can

*Plural.*

- 1. We can
- 2. Ye *or* you can
- 3. They can

*Past Tense.*

- 1. I could
- 2. Thou couldst *or* you could
- 3. He, she, *or* it could

- 1. We could
- 2. Ye *or* you could
- 3. They could

**INFLECTION OF VERBS IN COMBINATION.**

The generic verbs are most commonly used in com-



*Past Tense.*

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

1. I had
2. Thou hadst *or* you had
3. He, she, *or* it had

1. We had
2. Ye *or* you had
3. They had

*Participles.*

*Imperfect, Having. Perfect, Had.*

SHALL.\*

*Present Tense.*

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

1. I shall
2. Thou shalt *or* you shall
3. He, she, *or* it shall

1. We shall
2. Ye *or* you shall
3. They shall

*Past Tense.*

1. I should
2. Thou shouldst *or* you should
3. He, she, *or* it should

1. We should
2. Ye *or* you should
3. They should

\* *Shall* is a derivative from the Saxon *scéal*, *I owe*, *or I ought*; and signifies "*it is my duty*." It is used in this sense by our old writers; as, for instance, by Chaucer, when he says, "*The faith I shall to God*,"—that is, "*The faith I owe to God*;" nor has it even yet lost its original signification. "*Thou shalt not kill*" is "*thou oughtest not to kill*." But as all duties, though present in respect of their obligation, must be future in their performance, so, by a natural transition, this word, which strictly predicates only *present duty*, has come to be used as "*a note of future time*." Hence it is described in the text as expressive of duty, and, by inference, of futurity. *Will*, in like manner, only expresses present intention: yet, as the performance of present intention is necessarily future, it is employed to note futurity. "*I shall write*," in strictness intimates no more than that it is my present duty to write; but the phrase is universally interpreted as if it meant to intimate that I am to write at some time *now* future. "*He will write*," in strictness intimates no more than that it is his present intention to write, but the same interpretation is universally put upon it as upon the other phrase. The difference between the present application of *shall* and *will* is clearly stated by Webster: *shall* is merely future in the first person, and imperative in the other two; with *will* the case is exactly reversed.

**WILL.**

*Present Tense.*

*Singular.*

I will  
Thou wilt *or* you will  
He, she, *or* it will

*Plural.*

1. We will
2. Ye *or* you will
3. They will

*Past Tense.*

I would  
Thou wouldst *or* you would  
He, she, *or* it would

1. We would
2. Ye *or* you would
3. They would

**MAY.**

*Present Tense.*

*Singular.*

I may  
Thou mayest *or* you may  
He, she, *or* it may

*Plural.*

1. We may
2. Ye *or* you may
3. They may

*Past Tense.*

I might  
Thou mightest *or* you might  
He, she, *or* it might

1. We might
2. Ye *or* you might
3. They might

**CAN.**

*Present Tense.*

*Singular.*

I can  
Thou canst *or* you can  
He, she, *or* it can

*Plural.*

1. We can
2. Ye *or* you can
3. They can

*Past Tense.*

I could  
Thou couldst *or* you could  
He, she, *or* it could

1. We could
2. Ye *or* you could
3. They could

**INFLECTION OF VERBS IN COMBINATION.**

The generic verbs are most commonly used in com-

bination with other verbs, which are joined with them for the purpose of modifying their generic meaning.

Thus, if I say *I can*, I affirm that I have power or ability in general, without limiting it to any particular kind or application of power. But if I subjoin the specific verb *write*, and say *I can write*, I restrict my affirmation to my power to write.

Combinations of the generic verbs with other verbs, form what are called *Compound Verbs*.

Thus, *I have loved*, *I had written*, *I shall have walked*, *I might have been struck*, are compound verbs.

The generic verbs have obtained the name of *Auxiliary Verbs*, from being used principally to form compound verbs.

Compound verbs are essential, in order to enable us to express those additional tenses and modifications which languages of a more artificial structure express by inflection.

In consequence of the facility it affords for forming compound tenses, our language, though limited in tenses formed by inflection, is rich beyond most languages in tenses formed by combination.

When combined with other verbs, our generic verbs serve the same purposes that the inflections of the simple verb serve in languages which have numerous inflections.

The following is an example of the English compared with the French and Latin languages in this respect :—

ENGLISH.	FRENCH.	LATIN.
I <i>did</i> speak	Je parlais	Dicebam
I <i>shall</i> speak	Je parlerai*	Dicam
I <i>might</i> speak	Je parlerais	Dicerem

Here *did*, *shall*, and *might*, correspond to and serve the same purpose with the flexional terminations *ais*, *erai*, and *erais*, in French, and *ebam*, *am*, and *erem*, in Latin.

---

\* The French *parlerai*, I shall speak, is itself capable of being resolved into a generic and specific verb. It is just *je parler ai*, that is, *je ai parler*, I have to speak.

**WILL.**

*Present Tense.*

*Singular.*

I will  
Thou wilt *or* you will  
He, she, *or* it will

*Plural.*

1. We will
2. Ye *or* you will
3. They will

*Past Tense.*

I would  
Thou wouldst *or* you would  
He, she, *or* it would

1. We would
2. Ye *or* you would
3. They would

**MAY.**

*Present Tense.*

*Singular.*

I may  
Thou mayest *or* you may  
He, she, *or* it may

*Plural.*

1. We may
2. Ye *or* you may
3. They may

*Past Tense.*

I might  
Thou mightest *or* you might  
He, she, *or* it might

1. We might
2. Ye *or* you might
3. They might

**CAN.**

*Present Tense.*

*Singular.*

I can  
Thou canst *or* you can  
He, she, *or* it can

*Plural.*

1. We can
2. Ye *or* you can
3. They can

*Past Tense.*

I could  
Thou couldst *or* you could  
He, she, *or* it could

1. We could
2. Ye *or* you could
3. They could

**INFLECTION OF VERBS IN COMBINATION.**

The generic verbs are most commonly used in com-

bination with other verbs, which are joined with them for the purpose of modifying their generic meaning.

Thus, if I say *I can*, I affirm that I have power or ability in general, without limiting it to any particular kind or application of power. But if I subjoin the specific verb *write*, and say *I can write*, I restrict my affirmation to my power to write.

Combinations of the generic verbs with other verbs, form what are called *Compound Verbs*.

Thus, *I have loved*, *I had written*, *I shall have walked*, *I might have been struck*, are compound verbs.

The generic verbs have obtained the name of *Auxiliary Verbs*, from being used principally to form compound verbs.

Compound verbs are essential, in order to enable us to express those additional tenses and modifications which languages of a more artificial structure express by inflection.

In consequence of the facility it affords for forming compound tenses, our language, though limited in tenses formed by inflection, is rich beyond most languages in tenses formed by combination.

When combined with other verbs, our generic verbs serve the same purposes that the inflections of the simple verb serve in languages which have numerous inflections.

The following is an example of the English compared with the French and Latin languages in this respect :—

ENGLISH.	FRENCH.	LATIN.
I <i>did</i> speak	Je parlais	Dicebam
I <i>shall</i> speak	Je parlerai*	Dicam
I <i>might</i> speak	Je parlerais	Dicerem

Here *did*, *shall*, and *might*, correspond to and serve the same purpose with the flexional terminations *ais*, *erai*, and *erais*, in French, and *ebam*, *am*, and *erem*, in Latin.

---

\* The French *parlerai*, I shall speak, is itself capable of being resolved into a generic and specific verb. It is just *je parler ai*, that is, *je ai parler*, I have to speak.

pound Transitive Verbs have two Voices or 3,—the *Active* and the *Passive*.

*Active* is the form which the verb assumes its subject or nominative is the agent; as, "*I struck.*"

*Passive* is the form which the verb assumes its subject or nominative is the object of the ; as, "*I have been struck.*"

tenses formed by the help of the generic verbs expressive of *present* or *past* time, according : generic verbs are in the present or the past

s, *I have loved, I shall love, I may have loved*, express nt time, because *have, shall, and may*, are in the pre- tense; *I had loved, I should love, I might have loved*, as past time, because *had, should, and might*, are in the tense.

present and past tenses of the generic verbs are,

ent, Am, Do, Have, Shall, Will, May, Can.  
Was, Did, Had, Should, Would, Might, Could.

present or past, thus indicated by the tense of the ge- rbs, are the two fixed points, with reference to which other ideas expressed by the compound tenses are to be ed; and these other ideas are always *past, present, fu- ntigent, &c.*, with reference to these two fixed points. , for example, the compound tenses of the verb *com-* , in combination with another verb. Thus :—

engage to do	{	what I <i>am</i> commanding
		—— I <i>do</i> command
		—— I <i>have</i> commanded
		—— I <i>have</i> been commanding
		—— I <i>shall</i> command
		—— I <i>shall</i> be commanding
		—— I <i>shall</i> have commanded
		—— I <i>may</i> command
		—— I <i>may</i> have commanded
		—— I <i>can</i> command
		—— I <i>can</i> have commanded

bination with other verbs, which are joined with them for the purpose of modifying their generic meaning.

Thus, if I say *I can*, I affirm that I have power or ability in general, without limiting it to any particular kind or application of power. But if I subjoin the specific verb *write*, and say *I can write*, I restrict my affirmation to my power to write.

Combinations of the generic verbs with other verbs, form what are called *Compound Verbs*.

Thus, *I have loved*, *I had written*, *I shall have walked*, *I might have been struck*, are compound verbs.

The generic verbs have obtained the name of *Auxiliary Verbs*, from being used principally to form compound verbs.

Compound verbs are essential, in order to enable us to express those additional tenses and modifications which languages of a more artificial structure express by inflection.

In consequence of the facility it affords for forming compound tenses, our language, though limited in tenses formed by inflection, is rich beyond most languages in tenses formed by combination.

When combined with other verbs, our generic verbs serve the same purposes that the inflections of the simple verb serve in languages which have numerous inflections.

The following is an example of the English compared with the French and Latin languages in this respect :—

ENGLISH.	FRENCH.	LATIN.
I <i>did</i> speak	Je parlais	Dicebam
I <i>shall</i> speak	Je parlerai*	Dicam
I <i>might</i> speak	Je parlerais	Dicerem

Here *did*, *shall*, and *might*, correspond to and serve the same purpose with the flexional terminations *ais*, *erai*, and *erais*, in French, and *ebam*, *am*, and *erem*, in Latin.

---

\* The French *parlerai*, I shall speak, is itself capable of being resolved into a generic and specific verb. It is just *je parler ai*, that is, *je ai parler*, I have to speak.

Compound Transitive Verbs have two Voices or Forms,—the *Active* and the *Passive*.

The *Active* is the form which the verb assumes when its subject or nominative is the agent; as, “*I have struck.*”

The *Passive* is the form which the verb assumes when its subject or nominative is the object of the action; as, “*I have been struck.*”

The tenses formed by the help of the generic verbs are expressive of *present* or *past* time, according as the generic verbs are in the present or the past tense.

Thus, *I have loved, I shall love, I may have loved*, express present time, because *have, shall, and may*, are in the present tense; *I had loved, I should love, I might have loved*, express past time, because *had, should, and might*, are in the past tense.

The present and past tenses of the generic verbs are,

*Present*, Am, Do, Have, Shall, Will, May, Can.

*Past*, Was, Did, Had, Should, Would, Might, Could.

The present or past, thus indicated by the tense of the generic verbs, are the two fixed points, with reference to which all the other ideas expressed by the compound tenses are to be estimated; and these other ideas are always *past, present, future, contingent, &c.*, with reference to these two fixed points.

Take, for example, the compound tenses of the verb *command*, in combination with another verb. Thus :—

You engage to do	{	what I <i>am</i> commanding
		— I <i>do</i> command
		— I <i>have</i> commanded
		— I <i>have</i> been commanding
		— I <i>shall</i> command
		— I <i>shall</i> be commanding
		— I <i>shall</i> have commanded
		— I <i>may</i> command
		— I <i>may</i> have commanded
		— I <i>can</i> command
— I <i>can</i> have commanded		



Here the compound tenses, *I am commanding*, *I do command*, &c., express various accessory ideas respecting the act of commanding, or the act of having commanded. For instance, *I have commanded*, states that the act of commanding is *past*; *I shall command*, that it is *future*; *I shall have commanded*, that the act of having commanded is *future*; *I may have commanded*, that it is *contingent*. But as it is possible to insert the adverb *now* in any one of the expressions, and to say—

You engage to do	{	what I am <i>now</i> commanding
		— I do <i>now</i> command
		— I have <i>now</i> commanded
		&c. &c. &c.,

it is obvious that all these forms express barely the relation of the command to the present time, leaving the time when the command is actually given as indefinite, as present time, from its unlimited nature, necessarily is. Thus, *I have commanded*, merely states the act of commanding as *now* past, without specifying the time of giving the command, which may have been last moment, last month, &c. *I shall command*, merely states the action of commanding as *now* future, leaving the actual time of commanding completely indefinite, and to be ascertained, if necessary, from the context or narrative. And so of the rest.

You engage to do	{	what I <i>was</i> commanding
		— I <i>did</i> command
		— I <i>had</i> commanded
		— I <i>had</i> been commanding
		— I <i>should</i> command
		— I <i>should</i> be commanding
		— I <i>should</i> have commanded
		— I <i>might</i> command
		— I <i>might</i> have commanded
		— I <i>could</i> command
— I <i>could</i> have commanded		

These are the corresponding past tenses, and each of them contains an expression of past time, with reference to which all the other ideas contained in it are to be estimated; as is obvious from the fact, that the adverb *then* may be

introduced into each of them without affecting the sense.  
Thus :—

You engage to do	{	what I was <i>then</i> commanding
		— I did <i>then</i> command
		— I had <i>then</i> commanded
		&c.      &c.      &c.

In the same way that *was* is the past tense of *am*, *did* of *do*, *had* of *have*, &c., *I was commanding* is the past tense of *I am commanding*, *I did command* of *I do command*, *I had commanded* of *I have commanded*, &c.

The generic verbs, besides indicating the *time* in compound verbs, also indicate such accessary ideas as *existence*, *futurity*, *contingency*, and the like.

Thus, in the compound tense, *I may love*, which asserts *liberty* to love, it is the auxiliary *may* which expresses the *liberty*.

The state of the verbal action as *progressive* or in progress, *perfect* or finished, and the like, is always indicated by the *specific* verb.

Thus, in the compound tense, *I am loving*, which asserts that the act of loving is in progress, it is *loving*, not *am*, which expresses the idea of imperfection and progress.

The following is the Active Voice of a compound verb classified according to the relation of its tenses to present or past time :—

## ACTIVE VOICE.

### TO LOVE.

#### PRESENT TENSES.

#### *Present Progressive.*

##### *Singular.*

##### *Plural.*

- |                                      |                         |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. I am loving                       | 1. We are loving        |
| 2. Thou art loving or you are loving | 2. Ye or you are loving |
| 3. He is loving                      | 3. They are loving      |

*Present Emphatic.\***Singular.**Plural.*

- |                                  |                      |
|----------------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. I do love                     | 1. We do love        |
| 2. Thou dost love or you do love | 2. Ye or you do love |
| 3. He doth or does love          | 3. They do love      |

*Present Perfect.*

- |                                      |                         |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. I have loved                      | 1. We have loved        |
| 2. Thou hast loved or you have loved | 2. Ye or you have loved |
| 3. He has or hath loved              | 3. They have loved      |

*Present Perfect Progressive.*

- |  |                               |
|--|-------------------------------|
| 1. I have been loving                            | 1. We have been loving        |
| 2. Thou hast been loving or you have been loving | 2. Ye or you have been loving |
| 3. He has or hath been loving                    | 3. They have been loving      |

*Present Future.*

- |  |                                 |
|--|---------------------------------|
| 1. I shall or will love                              | 1. We shall or will love        |
| 2. Thou shalt or wilt love or you shall or will love | 2. Ye or you shall or will love |
| 3. He shall or will love                             | 3. They shall or will love      |

*Present Future Progressive.*

- |  |                                      |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| 1. I shall or will be loving                                   | 1. We shall or will be loving        |
| 2. Thou shalt or wilt be loving or you shall or will be loving | 2. Ye or you shall or will be loving |
| 3. He shall or will be loving                                  | 3. They shall or will be loving      |

*Present Future Perfect.*

- |  |                                       |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| 1. I shall or will have loved                                    | 1. We shall or will have loved        |
| 2. Thou shalt or wilt have loved or you shall or will have loved | 2. Ye or you shall or will have loved |
| 3. He shall or will have loved                                   | 3. They shall or will have loved      |

\* The following instance proves that this form differs from the simple present *I love* only in being more emphatic:—

“You cannot dread an honourable death.”

“I do dread it.”

This is one of those phraseologies which no language can fully express which does not employ generic verbs.

*Present Potential.\***Singular.**Plural.*

- |                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| 1. I may <i>or</i> can love         | 1. We may <i>or</i> can love .             |
| 2. Thou mayest <i>or</i> canst love | 2. Ye <i>or</i> you may <i>or</i> can love |
|                                     | <i>or</i> you may <i>or</i> can love       |
| 3. He may <i>or</i> can love        | 3. They may <i>or</i> can love             |

*Present Potential Perfect.*

- |                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| 1. I may <i>or</i> can have loved   | 1. We may <i>or</i> can have loved .             |
| 2. Thou mayest <i>or</i> canst have | 2. Ye <i>or</i> you may <i>or</i> can have       |
|                                     | loved <i>or</i> you may <i>or</i> can      loved |
|                                     | have loved                                       |
| 3. He may <i>or</i> can have loved  | 3. They may <i>or</i> can have loved             |

—  
PAST TENSES.*Past Progressive.**Singular.**Plural.*

- |                                   |                                 |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. I was loving                   | 1. We were loving               |
| 2. Thou wast loving <i>or</i> you | 2. Ye <i>or</i> you were loving |
|                                   | were loving                     |
| 3. He was loving                  | 3. They were loving             |

*Past Emphatic.†*

- |                                      |                              |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. I did love                        | 1. We did love               |
| 2. Thou didst love <i>or</i> you did | 2. Ye <i>or</i> you did love |
|                                      | love                         |
| 3. He did love                       | 3. They did love             |

---

\* The more accurate names for the tenses, *I may love* and *I can love*, are *Present Liberty* and *Present Ability*. But as the term *Potential* is more agreeable to the ear than these comparatively unauthorized terms, it has been preferred as the designation of both tenses, even at the risk of ambiguity. With regard to the *Past Tenses* which follow, the vagueness of the name is of less importance, as there is confessedly greater latitude in our language in the use and application of these tenses.

† This tense, like the simple past *I loved*, is indefinite in respect both to the time and the completion of the action. It is used for the sake of variety as well as of emphasis. In the following instance it is emphatic:—

“ You surely did not say that I told you ? ”  
 “ I *did* say so.”

## ETYMOLOGY.

*Past Perfect.**Singular.*

1. I had loved
2. Thou hadst loved
3. He had loved

*Plural.*

1. We had loved
2. You had loved
3. They had loved

*Past Perfect Progressive.*

- |                           |                         |
|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. I had been loving      | 1. We had been loving   |
| 2. Thou hadst been loving | 2. You had been loving  |
| 3. He had been loving     | 3. They had been loving |

*Past Future.*

- |                                  |                              |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. I should or would love        | 1. We should or would love   |
| 2. Thou shouldst or wouldst love | 2. You should or would love  |
| 3. He should or would love       | 3. They should or would love |

*Past Future Progressive.*

- |                                       |                                   |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. I should or would be loving        | 1. We should or would be loving   |
| 2. Thou shouldst or wouldst be loving | 2. You should or would be loving  |
| 3. He should or would be loving       | 3. They should or would be loving |

*Past Future Perfect.*

- |  |                                    |
|--|------------------------------------|
| 1. I should or would have loved        | 1. We should or would have loved   |
| 2. Thou shouldst or wouldst have loved | 2. You should or would have loved  |
| 3. He should or would have loved       | 3. They should or would have loved |

*Past Potential.*

- |                                 |                             |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. I might or could love        | 1. We might or could love   |
| 2. Thou mightst or couldst love | 2. You might or could love  |
| 3. He might or could love       | 3. They might or could love |

*Past Potential Perfect.*

- |                                       |                                   |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. I might or could have loved        | 1. We might or could have loved   |
| 2. Thou mightst or couldst have loved | 2. You might or could have loved  |
| 3. He might or could have loved       | 3. They might or could have loved |

## PARTICIPLE.

*Perfect, Having loved.*

## INFINITIVE.

*Perfect, To have loved.*

## IMPERATIVE.

2. Do thou love.

2. Do ye or you love.

The verb is said to be in the *Passive Voice* when the noun or subject, instead of describing the agent, describes the object of the action. Thus, "*John loves*" is in the *Active Voice*, and the subject, John, is the agent. "*John is loved*" is in the *Passive Voice*, and the subject, John, is the object of the verbal act, or the patient.

The following is the *Passive Form* of a *Compound Verb*:—

## PASSIVE VOICE.

## PRESENT TENSES.

<i>Present Indefinite,</i>	I am loved, &c.
<i>Present Progressive,</i>	I am being loved, &c.
<i>Present Perfect,</i>	I have been loved, &c.
<i>Present Future,</i>	I shall or will be loved, &c.
<i>Present Future Perfect,</i>	I shall or will have been loved, &c.
<i>Present Potential,</i>	I may or can be loved, &c.
<i>Present Potential Perfect,</i>	I may or can have been loved, &c.

## PAST TENSES.

<i>Past Indefinite,</i>	I was loved, &c.
<i>Past Progressive,</i>	I was being loved, &c.
<i>Past Perfect,</i>	I had been loved, &c.
<i>Past Future,</i>	I should or would be loved, &c.
<i>Past Future Perfect,</i>	I should or would have been loved, &c.
<i>Past Potential,</i>	I might or could be loved, &c.
<i>Past Potential Perfect,</i>	I might or could have been loved, &c.

## PARTICIPLE.

*Imperfect, Being loved. Compound Perfect, Having been loved.*

## INFINITIVE.

*Imperfect, To be loved. Perfect, To have been loved.*

## IMPERATIVE.

2. Be thou loved.

2. Be ye or you loved.

bination with other verbs, which are joined with them for the purpose of modifying their generic meaning.

Thus, if I say *I can*, I affirm that I have power or ability in general, without limiting it to any particular kind or application of power. But if I subjoin the specific verb *write*, and say *I can write*, I restrict my affirmation to my power to write.

Combinations of the generic verbs with other verbs, form what are called *Compound Verbs*.

Thus, *I have loved, I had written, I shall have walked, I might have been struck*, are compound verbs.

The generic verbs have obtained the name of *Auxiliary Verbs*, from being used principally to form compound verbs.

Compound verbs are essential, in order to enable us to express those additional tenses and modifications which languages of a more artificial structure express by inflection.

In consequence of the facility it affords for forming compound tenses, our language, though limited in tenses formed by inflection, is rich beyond most languages in tenses formed by combination.

When combined with other verbs, our generic verbs serve the same purposes that the inflections of the simple verb serve in languages which have numerous inflections.

The following is an example of the English compared with the French and Latin languages in this respect :—

ENGLISH.	FRENCH.	LATIN.
I <i>did</i> speak	Je parlais	Dicebam
I <i>shall</i> speak	Je parlerai*	Dicam
I <i>might</i> speak	Je parlerais	Dicerem

Here *did*, *shall*, and *might*, correspond to and serve the same purpose with the flexional terminations *ais*, *erai*, and *erais*, in French, and *ebam*, *am*, and *erem*, in Latin.

---

\* The French *parlerai*, I shall speak, is itself capable of being resolved into a generic and specific verb. It is just *je parler ai*. that is, *je ai parler*, I have to speak.

Compound Transitive Verbs have two Voices or Forms,—the *Active* and the *Passive*.

The *Active* is the form which the verb assumes when its subject or nominative is the agent; as, "*I have struck.*"

The *Passive* is the form which the verb assumes when its subject or nominative is the object of the action; as, "*I have been struck.*"

The tenses formed by the help of the generic verbs are expressive of *present* or *past* time, according as the generic verbs are in the present or the past tense.

Thus, *I have loved, I shall love, I may have loved*, express present time, because *have, shall, and may*, are in the present tense; *I had loved, I should love, I might have loved*, express past time, because *had, should, and might*, are in the past tense.

The present and past tenses of the generic verbs are,

*Present*, Am, Do, Have, Shall, Will, May, Can.

*Past*, Was, Did, Had, Should, Would, Might, Could.

The present or past, thus indicated by the tense of the generic verbs, are the two fixed points, with reference to which all the other ideas expressed by the compound tenses are to be estimated; and these other ideas are always *past, present, future, contingent*, &c., with reference to these two fixed points.

Take, for example, the compound tenses of the verb *command*, in combination with another verb. Thus :—

You engage to do	{	what I <i>am</i> commanding
		—— I <i>do</i> command
		—— I <i>have</i> commanded
		—— I <i>have</i> been commanding
		—— I <i>shall</i> command
		—— I <i>shall</i> be commanding
		—— I <i>shall</i> have commanded
		—— I <i>may</i> command
		—— I <i>may</i> have commanded
		—— I <i>can</i> command
		—— I <i>can</i> have commanded



**ETYMOLOGY.*****Perfect Tense.******Singular.***

1. I have been loved
2. Thou hast been loved
3. He has been loved

***Plural.***

1. We have been loved
2. Ye or you have been loved
3. They have been loved

***Pluperfect Tense.***

1. I had been loved
2. Thou hadst been loved
3. He had been loved

1. We had been loved
2. Ye or you had been loved
3. They had been loved

***Present Future Tense.***

1. I shall or will be loved
2. Thou shalt or wilt be loved
3. He shall or will be loved

1. We shall or will be loved
2. Ye or you shall or will be loved
3. They shall or will be loved

***Future Perfect Tense.***

1. I shall or will have been loved
2. Thou shalt or wilt have been loved
3. He shall or will have been loved

1. We shall or will have been loved
2. Ye or you shall or will have been loved
3. They shall or will have been loved

**POTENTIAL MOOD.*****Present Tense.***

1. I may or can be loved
2. Thou mayest or canst be loved
3. He may or can be loved

1. We may or can be loved
2. Ye or you may or can be loved
3. They may or can be loved

***Imperfect Tense.***

1. I might, could, would, or should be loved
2. Thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, or shouldst be loved
3. He might, could, would, or should be loved

1. We might, could, would, or should be loved
2. Ye or you might, could, would, or should be loved
3. They might, could, would, or should be loved

***Perfect Tense.***

1. I may or can have been loved
2. Thou mayest or canst have been loved
3. He may or can have been loved

1. We may or can have been loved
2. Ye or you may or can have been loved
3. They may or can have been loved

*Pluperfect Tense.*

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. I might, could, would, or should have been loved            | 1. We might, could, would, or should have been loved        |
| 2. Thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, or shouldst have been loved | 2. Ye or you might, could, would, or should have been loved |
| 3. He might, could, would, or should have been loved           | 3. They might, could, would, or should have been loved      |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

- |                   |                        |
|-------------------|------------------------|
| 2. Be thou loved. | 2. Be ye or you loved. |
|-------------------|------------------------|

INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Present Tense.*

*Perfect Tense.*

To be loved.

To have been loved.

PARTICIPLES.

*Imperfect,*

Being loved.

*Compound Perfect,* Having been loved.

EXERCISES ON THE INFLECTION OF WORDS.

THE NOUN.

1. NUMBER.—*Point out which of the following Nouns admit of number :—*

Ark, Babel, church, Darius, elm, France, girl, hamlet, innkeeper, iron.

*What is the number of the following Nouns ?*

Berries, church, days, hills, lashes, mosses, nuts, pence, planets, silk.

*Pronounce and spell the plural of the following Nouns :—*

Ass, army, book, brush, chair, city, delay, dandy, envoy, fly, fox, grandee, hero, horse, inch, jelly, knife, lake, monarch, negro, pass, penny, queen, rebus, rostrum, scarf, stratum, watch, whiff.

*How do we form the plural of*

Die, dwarf, dangeon, fife, fish, folio, genius, grotto, hoof, index, jay, lamina, ox, pea, radius, seraph, sheep, tooth, virtuosos.

*Correct the errors in the following expressions :—*

Two foxs, old folloes, sharp reproves, young calfs, tall foot-

mans, they are brethren sons of the same father, two dwarves, how many swines? I have two foots, handsome ladys, idle boies, sturdy oxes, volcanos are generally on islands.

**2. GENDER.**—*What is the gender of*

Boy, Charles, child, cousin, dog, father, farthing, friend, horse, huntsman, inkstand, Ireland, joy, king, lass, master, parent, quantity, stag, widower.

*Convert the following masculine Nouns into feminine Nouns, pronouncing and spelling the feminine :—*

Drake, duke, earl, emperor, gentleman, hart, hero, host, hunter, lion, male-child, master, nephew, shepherd, widower.

*Correct the errors in the following expressions :—*

Alexander, my sister. David is a widow. Eliza is a bridegroom. Charles the Second was a bad queen. She was my benefactress. How sweet a songsteress! This is my tutress. O the traitoress! Look at that goatess.

**3. CASE.**—*Point out the Nouns in the following sentences, and mention in what case each of them is :—*

John struck the table.

John's horse kicked James.

My brother's dog bit me, but I stoned my brother's dog.

The wall of the city shelters my father's house.

My father's house is sheltered by the wall of the city.

Men's thoughts are vanity.

*Decline the following Nouns, both orally and in writing :—*

Ass, author, beau, Charles, hero, mother, parent, queen, ruler, woman.

**4. PARSING OF NOUNS.**—*Parse the following sentences; telling the number, gender, and case, of each of the Nouns :—*

His house is desolate. The queen is a favourite with the nation. That shepherd carefully watches his sheep, lest the wolves come and seize such as are feeble.

Five hundred soldiers are in the castle on the hill.

My father's table is ever open to the stranger and the friendless.

He ploughs his field with oxen.

The duchess is affable in her manners.

The widow's mite is often in the sight of God of great price.

## THE ADJECTIVE.

*Point out the Adjectives in the following list which admit of comparison :—*

Able, beautiful, circular, cold, evil, few, four, full, golden, hilly, ill, just, long, mournful, ninth, open, right, square, supreme, universal, worshipful, worthy.

*What degree of comparison is*

Ancient, better, costliest, dreary, envious, gayest, huge, lazy, more, most tremendous, next, superior, uttermost ?

*Pronounce and spell the comparatives and superlatives of*

Bad, big, coy, cruel, faithful, grave, hale, ill, little, low, mad, pretty, pure, true, white, worthless.

*Correct the following expressions :—*

The good scholar is happier as well as attentiver than the idler. Spring is the beautifulest season of the year ; summer is the hottest ; winter is the gloomyest ; autumn is the livelyest. I have done it the rightest way, and deserve the chiefest prize. John is littler, but gooder than you.

## THE PRONOUN.

*What kind of Pronoun is*

Who, self, he, she, we, they, that, whether, our, their, which, what, thy, thou ?

*Tell the person, number, gender, and case, of each of the following Pronouns :—*

Him, us, I, them, thine, yours, theirs, ours, ye, he, she, mine, we.

*Parse the following sentences,—telling the number, gender, and case of Nouns ; the degrees of comparison of the Adjectives ; and the person, number, gender, and case, of the Pronouns :—*

I love the boy who loves his lessons.

I dislike these idle fellows.

Charles and David are the best wrestlers, but the worst scholars in their respective classes.

The girl who gained the third prize last year is dux this year : she deserves the highest praise.

Many children, whose parents are poor, attain to learning, wealth, and honour.

Good character and good education are surer roads to eminence than either large estates or illustrious birth.

#### THE VERB.

*What are the names of the following parts of the Verb?*

Writing, learned, to love, run, flattering, hasten, hastened, to move, defeated, conquering, *strike* but *hear* me, come and try, come to try, hating, defended.

*Regular Verbs to be inflected after the manner of "to love."*

Ask, attend, bestow, cancel, command, commend, conquer, defend, dismiss, finish, gain, guard, learn, order, please, pray, prohibit, restore, walk.

*Irregular Verbs to be inflected after the manner of "to write."*

Begin, blow, choose, draw, fall, freeze, fly, give, go, hide, know, lade, lie, alide, take, wear, weave.

*Tell the person, number, and tense, of*

I struck; he is; we have; thou lovest; thou art; I had; we were; you might; I wrote; thou abodest; ye brought; I cast; you thrust; they shall; we would; they are; thou hast; I bled; thou canst; I am; they fled; we shone; they wept; you shall; he were; you were.

*Parse the following expressions, first as inflected tenses, and then as tenses formed by combination with Generic Verbs:—*

I have written.\* He should fear.† We had loved. You shall be writing. They may flatter. They are smitten. I is sold. They could read. We should have finished. They were beaten. I do say. They will come. We had been

\* The pupil is expected to parse such phrases in two ways, as follows:—"I have is the 1st person singular of the present tense of the irregular verb *have*, *had*, *had*; and *written* is the perfect participle of the irregular verb *write*, *wrote*, *written*. Or, *I have written* is the 1st person singular of the present perfect of the compound verb formed by combining the generic verb *have* with the specific verb *write*."

† *He should* is the 3d person singular of the past tense of the irregular verb *shall*, *should*; and *fear* is the infinitive of the regular verb *fear*, *feared*, *feared*. Or, *he should fear* is the 3d person singular of the past future of the compound verb, &c.

playing. Thou hast been trifling. They are hastening. They might rejoice. You can speak.

*What are the names given to the following part of the Compound Verb?*

I do speak. Thou art writing. He shall have commanded. We did read. You might work. They had finished. Thou hast heard. We may run. I had been sailing. You shall be walking. I might have been toiling. I can stop. He is injured. They were struck. He could have hastened. We have been rejoicing. They had been beaten.

*Parse the following passages,—not only naming the parts of speech, but telling their case, tense, &c.*

He is the temperate man whose health directs his appetite; who is best pleased with what best agrees with him; who eats not to gratify his taste, but to preserve his life; who is the same at every table as at his own; who when he feasts is not cloyed; and sees all the delicacies before him that luxury can accumulate, yet preserves a due abstinence amidst them.

La Roche was a Protestant clergyman of Switzerland. He was a devout man, as became his profession. He possessed devotion in all its warmth, but with none of its asperity;—I mean that asperity which men, called devout, sometimes indulge in. Affliction for the loss of a beloved wife brought on a long and lingering illness, for which travelling was prescribed. His amiable daughter and only child was the companion of his travels. After an ineffectual and melancholy journey, he was returning home, when he was suddenly seized with a dangerous disorder, at a small town in France, where a celebrated British philosopher then resided.

The courage of the English is different from that of the French. It is neither so buoyant in prosperity, nor so dejected in reverses. Take away from a Frenchman the success which secures applause,—the most powerful of all the incitements which his nature owns,—and you make a mere coward of him. But an Englishman's courage is, like all his other qualities, accompanied by reflection; and where the Frenchman's begins to fail, his rises from the resources he finds within his mind and heart. He is circumspect while the empest only threatens, but intrepid when it bursts upon him.

He requires no motive but danger to be brave ; and his fortitude does not abandon him, even when his courage can be of no avail.

At last

The clouds consign their treasures to the fields ;  
 And, softly shaking o'er the dimpled pool  
 Prelusive drops, let all their moisture flow  
 In large effusion o'er the freshened world.  
 The stealing shower is scarce to patter heard  
 By such as wander through the forest walk  
 Beneath the umbrageous multitude of leaves.  
 But who can hold the shade while Heaven descends  
 In universal bounty, shedding herbs,  
 And fruits, and flowers, on Nature's ample lap !  
 Swift Fancy, fired, anticipates their growth ;  
 And, while the milky nutriment distils,  
 Beholds the kindling country colour round !

I'll prove the word that I have made my theme,  
 Is, that that may be *doubled* without blame,  
 And that that that thus *trebled* I may use ;  
 And that that *that*, that critics may abuse,  
 May be correct. Farther the Dons to bother,  
*Five* thats may closely follow one another !  
 For be it known that we may safely write,  
 Or say—That that *that* that that man writ was right !  
 Nay ev'n, That that *that* that that *that* has followed  
 Through *six* repeats, the grammar's rule has hallowed !  
 And that that *that*—that “ that ” that *that* began  
 Repeated *seven* times is right !—Deny't who can ?

### III. DERIVATION.

*Derivation* is that part of Etymology which treats of the *Origin* and *Primary Signification* of words.

The words of a cultivated language, however numerous and apparently unconnected, are found on examination to be reducible to groups or families, and to be related to each other by Identity of origin and similarity of signification.

Thus, the words *justly, justice, justify, justification, judiciary, adjust, readjust, unjust, injustice, &c.*, are all kindred words, connected with their common parent *just*. In like manner, *terrace, terraqueous, terrene, terrestrial, terrier, territory, inter, interment, disinter, Mediterranean, subterranean, &c.*, are all connected with their parent *terra*, the earth.

The words of a language are either *Primitive* or *Derivative*.

A *Primitive* word is not derived from any simpler word in the language; as, *man, just*.

A *Derivative* word is formed from some word of greater simplicity; as, *manhood, unjust*.

The primitive words of a language are always few in number, or at least bear a small proportion to the whole amount of its vocabulary.

The primitives of the Greek,—one of the most various and copious of languages,—do not, according to Dr Adam Smith, exceed three hundred: And Lord Monboddo even goes so far as to maintain that its whole vocabulary is derived from five duads, or significant combinations of two letters.

A language is considered perfect in respect of etymological structure when its primitives are very few in comparison of its derivatives, and when it has not only all the latter but also all the former within itself, and of its own growth.

Derivation seems to be an artifice of language to keep the number of words within proper bounds.

When the enlargement of his knowledge requires the use of a new word, it is natural for man, instead of inventing at once a sound altogether arbitrary, to graft a derivative, significant of the thing he wishes to express, on some well-known stock: And the principle on which he proceeds in selecting the stock and forming the derivative, is, to express things which are connected together by words which have also a connexion with one another.

The effect of this modification of old words in preventing the multiplication of new ones is well illustrated by the derivatives which are employed to express number. We



give names to particular numbers to the extent of *ten*, and then we turn back and reckon *ten and one*, *ten and two*, *ten and three*, &c., giving names to the new numbers compounded of the names of the old. Thus,\* *thirteen* (three-ten), *fourteen* (four-ten), *fifteen* (five-ten), &c. In this way we go on till we come to twice ten, which is expressed by a word (twenty) analogous to the names of two and ten. In like manner we count *three tens* (thirty), *four tens* (forty), &c., till we come to *ten tens*, which is expressed by a new word (hundred). Then the reckoning proceeds till it comes to *ten hundred*, which is expressed by another new word (thousand): and so on, till we come to *ten hundred thousand*, which requires the invention of another new word (million). Thus, by the help of derivation and composition, we are enabled to express by a few new words all possible numbers,—which, without such help, would alone have required a language to express them.

## I. ORIGIN OF WORDS.

### ENGLISH ROOTS.

The English language, instead of having its roots within itself, like the Greek, derives them from various languages.

The basis of the language is the Saxon, which was spoken in England during the time of the Anglo-Saxons. But the original stock, besides being greatly modified by use, has received large and constant additions from other languages. The Danish and Norman invasions successively introduced a few Danish and Norman-French words. Subsequently, a great number of Latin and Greek words obtained currency, as also some French, Italian, and Spanish words. And, more recently, many scientific terms, especially the names of natural productions, have been adopted from the German; as well as many names of new commodities of commerce borrowed from the

---

\* *Eleven* and *twelve* are not cited as examples, because the word *ten* does not enter into their composition; but they are really formed on the same principle as *thirteen*, *fourteen*, &c. "*Eleven*" is *Eleve-ane*, that is *ten-one*, and "*twelve*" is *two-cleve*, that is *two-ten*, *cleve* being synonymous with *ten*.

countries whence they have been imported. The great majority of our words, however, are still either of Saxon or of Latin origin.

The roots of the English language may be divided into such as have been naturalized in the form of *entire words*, and such as have been admitted only as the *radical parts* of derivative or compound words.

*Lucrē*, from the Latin *lucrum*, is a root of the former class ; *omni* in *omnipotent*, from the Latin *omnis*, is a root of the latter class.

Such roots as have been naturalized in the form of entire or separate words have been adopted into the language without almost any change except a slight alteration or transposition of their final letters.

But such as have been naturalized for the purpose of appearing only in composition as inseparable roots, have also lost their distinctive character as particular parts of speech.

#### SEPARABLE ROOTS.

The roots of the principal parts of speech are more easily traceable to their origin, and have undergone more regular changes in passing into the language, than those of indeclinable words.

The *Saxon* words, which form the basis of the language, have undergone various changes in their grammatical structure as well as in their final letters.

All the Saxon cases except the possessive—where (*'s*) has taken the place of *es*—have disappeared ; the Saxon plural termination *en* has been supplanted by *s*, except in a few words ; as, *oxen*, *hosen*, &c. ; the termination of the Saxon infinitive *an* has been dispensed with ; as, *forgive* for *forgivan* ; and the variations of the verb in the several persons have also been materially changed.

The *Latin* words which have been naturalized have, except in the case of technical terms, suffered a change of termination.

Thus, the termination *alis* is changed into *al* ; as, from *orientalis*, *oriental*.

*Atus* is changed into *ate* ; as, from *status*, *state*.

*Bilis* is changed into *ble* ; as, from *laudabilis*, *laudable*.

*Crum* is changed into *cre* ; as, from *lucrum*, *lucre*.

*Ctus* and *ctum* are changed into *ct* ; as, from *actus*, *act* ; from *effectus*, *effect* ; from *edictum*, *edict*.

*Culus* and *culum* are changed into *cle* ; as, from *circulus*, *circle* ; from *curriculum*, *curricule*.

*Enus* is changed into *ene* ; as, from *terrenus*, *terrene*.

*Erus* is changed into *ere* ; as, from *sincerus*, *sincere*.

*Gnus* and *gnum* are changed into *gn* ; as, from *benignus*, *benign* ; from *signum*, *sign*.

*Idus* is changed into *id* ; as, from *candidus*, *candid*.

*Ilis* is changed into *ile* ; as, from *docilis*, *docile*.

*Inus* is changed into *ine* ; as, from *divinus*, *divine*.

*Io* is changed into *ion* ; as, from *religio*, *religion*.

*Ivus* is changed into *ive* ; as, from *activus*, *active*.

*Ns* is changed into *nt* ; as, from *innocens*, *innocent*.

*Ntia* is changed into *nce* ; as, from *scientia*, *science*.

*O*, when preceded by a single consonant, is changed into *e* ; as, from *scribo*, *scribe* ; from *confido*, *confide* ; from *reviso*, *revise* ; from *altitudo*, *altitude*.

*O*, when preceded by a double consonant, is, together with the last consonant, omitted ; as, from *committo*, *commit* ; from *compello*, *compel*.

*Osus* is changed into *ose* or *ous* ; as, from *jocosus*, *jocose* ; from *calamitosus*, *calamitous*.

*Sus* is changed into *se* ; as, from *sensus*, *sense*.

*Ssus* is changed into *ss* ; as, from *recessus*, *recess* ; from *remissus*, *remiss*.

*Tas* is changed into *ty* ; as, from *charitas*, *charity*.

*Ugium* is changed into *uge* ; as, from *refugium*, *refuge*.

*Unus* is changed into *une* ; as, from *jejunus*, *jeune*.

*Urus* is changed into *ure* ; as, from *securus*, *secure*.

*Usus* is changed into *usc* ; as, from *usus*, *use*.

*Utus* and *utum* are changed into *ute* ; as, from *arbutus*, *arbut* ; from *statutum*, *statute*.

*Xus* is changed into *x* ; as, from *prolixus*, *prolix*.

The Latin words which have suffered more than a change of termination in passing into English are chiefly such as have been received through the medium of the French ; as,

LATIN.	FRENCH.	ENGLISH.
la, a wing	Aile	Aisle
uctor	Auteur	Author
onitas, goodness	Bonté	Bounty
os, an ox	Bœuf	Beef
revis, short	Brief	Brief
alifacere, to warm	Echauffer	Chafe
analis, a pipe	Chenal	Channel
anna, a reed	Canne	Cane
aput, the head	Chef*	Chief
armen, a song or incantation	Charme	Charm
atena	Chaîne	Chain
oluber, a snake†	Couleuvrine	Culverin
omputare, to reckon	Compter	Count
ooperire	Couvrir	Cover
ultellus	Coutelas	Cutlass
iabolus	Diable	Devil
ignari, to think worthy	Deigner	Deign
bur	Ivoire	Ivory
xtraneus, outward	Etranger	Stranger
eretrum	Bière	Bier
erox	Féroce	Fierce
idelitas, fidelity	{ Feodalité Feaulté }	{ Fealty
igas	Géant	Giant
ubernare	Gouverner	Govern
ula, the throat	Goulet	Gullet
ncantare	Enchanter	Enchant
imicitia	Inimitié	Enmity
ectarium, a bed	Litière	Litter
evare, to lift	Lever	Lift‡

\* There can be no doubt that *chef* is from *caput*; because it can be traced in old writers through the successive stages of its progress,—*chept*, *chep*, *chef*.

† Many warlike instruments take their names from animals; as, *basilisk*, *falconet*, *ramrod*, &c.

‡ *Lift* is from the perfect participle of an obsolete verb *leve*, as *rist* from *drive*. It is still used as a participle in two instances in the Bible.

LATIN.	FRENCH.	ENGLISH.
<b>Lex</b>	<b>Loi</b>	<b>Law</b>
<b>Macer, lean</b>	<b>Maigre</b>	<b>Meagre</b>
<b>Magister</b>	<b>Maistre, Maître</b>	<b>Master</b>
<b>Magnus, great</b>	<b>Magne</b>	<b>Main</b>
<b>Medietas, the middle</b>	<b>Moitié</b>	<b>Moiety</b>
<b>Mirabile</b>	<b>Merveille</b>	<b>Marvel</b>
<b>Nomen, a name</b>	<b>Nom</b>	<b>Noun</b>
<b>Numerus, a number</b>	<b>Nombre</b>	<b>Number</b>
<b>Nutrix</b>	<b>Nourrice</b>	<b>Nurse</b>
<b>Oleum</b>	<b>Huile</b>	<b>Oil</b>
<b>Paganus</b>	<b>Paysan</b>	<b>Peasant</b>
<b>Panarium, a basket</b>	<b>Panier</b>	<b>Pannier</b>
<b>Passus, a step</b>	<b>Pas</b>	<b>Pace</b>
<b>Pauper</b>	<b>Pauvre</b>	<b>Poor</b>
<b>Peregrinus</b>	<b>Pélerin</b>	<b>Pilgrim</b>
<b>Populus, the people</b>	<b>Peuple</b>	<b>People</b>
<b>Præpositus, placed over</b>	{ <b>Prévost, now</b> } <b>Prévôt</b>	<b>Provost</b>
<b>Presbyter</b>	{ <b>Prebste or</b> } <b>Prestre, now</b> } <b>Prêtre</b>	<b>Priest</b>
<b>Probare, to prove</b>	<b>Prouver</b>	<b>Prove</b>
<b>Pullus, a chicken</b>	<b>Poulet</b>	<b>Poult, Poultry</b>
<b>Puppis, the stern of a ship</b>	<b>Poupe</b>	<b>Poop</b>
<b>Ratio, reason</b>	<b>Raison</b>	<b>Reason</b>
<b>Recipere, to receive</b>	<b>Recevoir</b>	<b>Receive</b>
<b>Regnare, to rule</b>	<b>Regner</b>	<b>Reign</b>
<b>Rotundus</b>	<b>Rond</b>	<b>Round</b>
<b>Sapor, taste</b>	<b>Saveur</b>	<b>Savour</b>
<b>Supernus, supreme</b>	<b>Souverain</b>	<b>Sovereign</b>
<b>Tegula, a tile</b>	<b>Tuile</b>	<b>Tile</b>
<b>Traditor</b>	<b>Traître</b>	<b>Traitor</b>
<b>Visus, a sight</b>	<b>Vue</b>	<b>View</b>

The *Greek* words which have been naturalized have also undergone, in general, a change of termination.

Thus, the termination *ia* is changed into *y* ; as, from *prosodia*, *prosody* ; from *apologia*, *apology*.

*ikos* is changed into *ic* or *ical* ; as, from *mechanikos*, *mechanic* or *mechanical*.

*Ismos* is changed into *ism* ; as, from *aphorismos*, *aphorism*.

*Ogos* is changed into *ogue* ; as, from *epilogus*, *epilogue*.

The number, however, of Latin and Greek words which have been adopted into English as separate words is comparatively small.

#### INSEPARABLE ROOTS.

The great proportion of the Latin and Greek roots of the English language is found only in composition.

The changes which roots that are found only in composition undergo, cannot easily be reduced to general rules ; but an inspection of the following lists will sufficiently illustrate their nature :—

#### LATIN ROOTS FOUND ONLY IN COMPOSITION.

Root and Meaning.	Representative.	Example.
Acris, sharp	<i>acri</i>	<i>acrimony</i>
Aedes, a house	<i>edi</i>	<i>edify, edifice</i>
Aevum, an age	<i>ev</i>	<i>coeval</i>
Ager, agri, a field	<i>agri</i>	<i>agriculture</i>
Agger, a heap	<i>agger</i>	<i>exaggerate</i>
Ala, a wing	<i>ali</i>	<i>aliped</i>
Altus, high	<i>alt</i>	<i>exalt</i>
Amicus, a friend	<i>amic, imic</i>	<i>amicable, inimical</i>
Amo, I love	} <i>amor, am</i>	<i>amorous, amiable</i>
Amor, love		
Animus, mind	<i>anim</i>	<i>animate, unanimous, animadvert</i>
Annus, a circle, a year	<i>annu, amn, enni</i>	<i>annual, annals, biennial</i>
Aqua, water	<i>aqua, aqu</i>	<i>aquatic, aqueous, aqueduct</i>
Arceo, I drive away	<i>erc</i>	<i>coercion</i>
Aro, I plough	<i>ar</i>	<i>arable</i>
Artus, a joint	<i>art</i>	<i>articulate</i>
Asper, rough	<i>asper</i>	<i>asperity, exasperate</i>

Root and Meaning.	Representative.	Example.
Audio, I hear	<i>audi</i>	<i>audit, auditory</i>
Augeo, I increase, <i>aug-</i> tus, increased	<i>aug, auc</i>	<i>augment, auction</i>
Avis, a bird	<i>avi</i>	<i>aviary</i>
Beatus, blessed	<i>beat</i>	<i>beatitude</i>
Bellum, war	<i>belli, bel</i>	<i>belligerent, rebel</i>
Bene, well	<i>bene</i>	<i>benediction</i>
Bibo, I drink	<i>bib</i>	<i>imbibe, wine-bibber</i>
Bis, twice	<i>bi</i>	<i>biped</i>
Brevis, short	<i>brevi</i>	<i>brevity, abbreviate</i>
Cado, I fall, casus, fal- len (changed into <i>cido</i> when compounded)	<i>cad, casu, cid</i>	<i>cadaverous, casual, ac- cident</i>
Cædo, I cut, cæsus, cut (changed into <i>cido</i> and <i>cisus</i> when com- pounded)	<i>cide, cis, cise</i>	<i>homicide, incision, pre- cise</i>
Cando, I set on fire, <i>cand,</i> census, inflamed	<i>cand, cense, cendi</i>	<i>incandescence, incens. incendiary</i>
Capillus, hair	<i>capill</i>	<i>capillary</i>
Capio, I take, captus, taken ( <i>cipio</i> and <i>ceptus</i> when com- pounded)	<i>capt, cept, cipi</i>	<i>capture, reception, re- pient</i>
Caput, capitis, the head	<i>capit, cipit</i>	<i>capital, precipitate</i>
Carcer, a prison	<i>carcer</i>	<i>incarcerate</i>
Caro, carnis, flesh	<i>carn, carni</i>	<i>incarnate, carnivorous</i>
Carus, dear	<i>car</i>	<i>caress</i>
Cedo, I give place, I go, cessio, a giving place to	<i>cede, cede, cess</i>	<i>recede, succeed, concu- sion, access</i>
Celer, swift	<i>celer</i>	<i>celerity, accelerate</i>
Centum, a hundred	<i>cent</i>	<i>century, centennial</i>
Cete, whales	<i>cet</i>	<i>cetaceous</i>
Cinctus, girt about	<i>cinct</i>	<i>succinct, precincts</i>
Cio, I call, I rouse	<i>cit</i>	<i>citation</i>
Clamo, I cry out	<i>clam, claim</i>	<i>exclamation, proclaim</i>
Clarus, clear	<i>clari, clare</i>	<i>clarify, declare</i>
Claudo, I shut, clausus, shut (changed into <i>claus</i> <i>cludo</i> and <i>clusus</i> when compounded)	<i>clude, clus, claus</i>	<i>exclude, seclusion, clause</i>
Clino, I bend	<i>cline</i>	<i>recline</i>
Clivus, a slope	<i>cliv</i>	<i>declivity</i>
Coelum, heaven	<i>cel</i>	<i>celestial</i>
Colo, I cultivate, cul- tus, cultivated	<i>col, cult</i>	<i>colony, culture</i>

Root and Meaning.	Representative.	Example.
Comes, comitis, a companion	<i>comit</i>	<i>concomitant</i>
Copia, plenty	<i>copi</i>	<i>copious</i>
Coquo, I boil	<i>coc</i>	<i>decoction</i>
Cor, cordis, the heart	<i>cord</i>	<i>cordial</i>
Cornu, a horn	<i>corn, cornu</i>	<i>unicorn, cornucopia</i>
Corpus, corporis, the body	<i>corpus, corpor, corpu</i>	<i>corpuscle, incorporate, corpulent</i>
Cras, to-morrow	<i>cras</i>	<i>procrastinate</i>
Credo, I trust	<i>cred</i>	<i>credit, credulous, credible</i>
Cremo, I burn	<i>crem</i>	<i>incremation</i>
Crux, crucis, a cross	<i>cruci</i>	<i>crucify</i>
Cubo, I lie (cumbo when compounded)	<i>cub, cumb</i>	<i>incubation, incumbent</i>
Culpa, a fault, I find fault with	<i>culpo, culp</i>	<i>culpable</i>
Cura, care	<i>cura, cure</i>	<i>curator, sinecure</i>
Curro, I run	{ <i>cur, curr, cour, curs</i> }	{ <i>incur, curricule, succour, excursion</i> }
Cursus, a running		
Datus, given (ditus when compounded)		<i>addition</i>
Decus, decoris, honour	<i>grace, decor</i>	<i>decorous, decoration</i>
Dens, dentis, a tooth	<i>dent, denti</i>	<i>dentist, dentifrice</i>
Deus, a god	<i>Dei</i>	<i>Deity, deify</i>
Dexter, right-handed, clever	<i>dexter</i>	<i>dexterity</i>
Dico, I say, dictus, said	<i>dict</i>	<i>predict, dictate</i>
Dies, day	<i>di</i>	<i>dial, diary, meridian, diurnal</i>
Dignus, worthy, meet	<i>digni</i>	<i>dignity, dignitary</i>
Doceo, I teach, taught	<i>doctus, doct, doc</i>	<i>doctor, doctrine, docile</i>
Doleo, I grieve	<i>dole</i>	<i>condole</i>
Dolor, grief	<i>dolor</i>	<i>dolorous</i>
Dominus, a master	<i>domin</i>	<i>domineer, dominican</i>
Domus, a house	<i>domi, dom</i>	<i>domicile, domestic</i>
Donum, a gift	<i>don</i>	<i>donation</i>
Duco, I lead, ductus, led	<i>duce, duct</i>	<i>induce, aqueduct</i>
Duo, two	<i>du</i>	<i>dual, duel</i>
Durus, hard	<i>dur, dure</i>	<i>durable, endure</i>
Ebrius, drunken	<i>ebri</i>	<i>ebriety, inebriate</i>
Edo, I eat	<i>ed</i>	<i>edible</i>
Ego, I	<i>ego</i>	<i>egotist</i>



Root and Meaning.	Representative.	Example.
Emo, I buy, emptus, bought	<i>cem, empt</i>	<i>redcem, exemption</i>
Eo, I go, itum, to go	<i>it</i>	<i>exit, circuit, transit, edition</i>
Exter, outward	<i>exter</i>	<i>external</i>
Faber, a workman	<i>fabr</i>	<i>fabric</i>
Facilis, easy	<i>facil, ficul</i>	<i>facilitate, difficulty</i>
Facio, I make, fio, I am made, factus, made (ficio and sectus when compounded)	<i>fact, sect, fic, fy</i>	<i>factor, perfect, sopor, fic, purify</i>
Fallo, I deceive	<i>fall</i>	<i>infallible</i>
Fanum, a temple	<i>fane, fan</i>	<i>profane, profanation</i>
Fari, to speak	<i>fa</i>	<i>fate, infatigable</i>
Felix, felicitas, happy	<i>felic</i>	<i>felicity</i>
Femina, a woman	<i>femin</i>	<i>feminine, effeminacy</i>
Fero, I carry	<i>fer</i>	<i>ferry, infer, circumference</i>
Fictus, feigned	<i>fict</i>	<i>fiction, fictitious</i>
Fido, I trust	<i>fide, fid</i>	<i>confide, diffidence</i>
Filia, a daughter	} <i>fili</i>	<i>filial, affiliate</i>
Filius, son		
Finis, an end	<i>fini</i>	<i>finite, definite, definitive</i>
Fiscus, the imperial treasury	<i>fiso</i>	<i>fiscal, confiscate</i>
Fissum, a cleft	<i>fiss</i>	<i>fissure</i>
Flatus, a puff of wind	<i>flat, flatu</i>	<i>inflation, flatulent</i>
Flecto, I bend, flexus, bent	<i>flect, flex</i>	<i>reflect, flexible</i>
Fligo, I dash, flictus, dashed	<i>flict</i>	<i>conflict</i>
Flos, floris, a flower	<i>flor</i>	<i>florist, floral</i>
Fluctus, a wave	<i>fluctu</i>	<i>fluctuate</i>
Fluo, I flow, fluxus, a flowing	<i>flu, flux, fluid</i>	<i>fluent, reflux, fluidity</i>
Foedus, foederis, a treaty	<i>feder</i>	<i>confederate</i>
Fors, fortis, chance	<i>fort</i>	<i>fortuitous</i>
Fortis, strong	<i>forti</i>	<i>fortify</i>
Frango, I break, fractus, broken (fringo when compounded)	<i>fract, frag, fringe</i>	<i>fracture, fragment, infringe</i>
Frater, a brother	<i>frater</i>	<i>fraternal</i>
Frigeo, I am cold	<i>frig</i>	<i>frigid, refrigeration</i>
Fructus, fruit	<i>fruct</i>	<i>fructify</i>
Fruor, I enjoy	<i>fru</i>	<i>fruition</i>
Fugio, I fly	<i>fugi, fuge</i>	<i>fugitive, refuge</i>

Root and Meaning.	Representative.	Example.
ilgeo, I shine	<i>fulge</i>	<i>refulgent</i>
ilmen, fulminis, lightning	<i>fulmin</i>	<i>fulminate</i>
undo, I pour out, fuse, poured out	<i>fund, fus, fuse</i>	<i>refund, fusible, infuse</i>
glu, frost	<i>gel, geal</i>	<i>congelation, congeal</i>
gens, gentis, a nation	<i>gent</i>	<i>gentile</i>
genu, a knee	<i>genu</i>	<i>genuflexion</i>
gero, I carry, gestus, carried	<i>ger, gest</i>	<i>belligerent, gesture, digestion</i>
gigno, I beget, genitus, begotten	<i>genit</i>	<i>genital, progenitor</i>
glacies, ice	<i>glaci</i>	<i>glacial, glacier</i>
glomus, glomeris, a clew	<i>glomer</i>	<i>agglomeration</i>
gradior, I go, gradus, a step, gressus, having gone	<i>grade, gress, gradu</i>	<i>retrograde, aggression, gradual, graduate</i>
gramen, graminis, grass	<i>gramin</i>	<i>graminivorous</i>
gravis, heavy	<i>grav</i>	<i>gravity</i>
grex, gregis, a flock	<i>greg, gregi</i>	<i>gregarious, congregation, egregious</i>
haereo, I stick, haesus, stuck	<i>here, hes</i>	<i>adhere, cohesion</i>
heres, haeredis, an heir	<i>heredi</i>	<i>hereditary</i>
hallo, I breathe	<i>hale, hal</i>	<i>exhale, exhalation</i>
haurio, I draw, hausus, drawn	<i>haust</i>	<i>exhaust</i>
homo, a man	<i>homi, hum</i>	<i>homicide, human, humane</i>
hortor, I exhort	<i>hort</i>	<i>exhort</i>
hospes, hospitis, a guest	<i>hospit</i>	<i>hospitable</i>
hostis, an enemy	<i>host</i>	<i>hostile</i>
humus, the ground	<i>hum</i>	<i>inhumation, posthumous</i>
idem, the same	<i>iden</i>	<i>identity</i>
ignis, fire	<i>ign</i>	<i>ignition, igneous</i>
infera, below	<i>infer</i>	<i>infernal</i>
insula, an island	<i>insul, insula</i>	<i>insulate, peninsula</i>
intus, within us, within	} <i>inter, inti</i>	<i>internal, intimate</i>
itineris, a journey		
iterum, again	<i>iter</i>	<i>iterate</i>
iacere, I lie	<i>iacent</i>	<i>adjacent, circumjacent</i>
icio, I throw, jactus, thrown (jicio and jectus are compounded)	<i>ject</i>	<i>inject, conjecture</i>

Root and Meaning.	Representative.	Example.
Janua, a gate	<i>jani</i>	<i>janitor</i>
Jugum, a yoke	<i>jug</i>	<i>conjugate</i>
Jungo, I join, junctus, joined	<i>junct</i>	<i>adjunct, conjunction</i>
Juro, I swear	<i>jure</i>	<i>conjure</i>
Jus, juris, right, law	<i>juri, juris</i>	<i>juridical, jurisdiction</i>
Juvenis, a youth	<i>juven</i>	<i>juvenile</i>
Juvo, I assist, jutus, assisted	<i>jut</i>	<i>adjutant, coadjutor</i>
Lacer, torn	<i>lacer</i>	<i>lacerate</i>
Laedo, I hurt, laesus, hurt (lido and lisus when compounded)	<i>lis</i>	<i>collision</i>
Lapis, lapidis, a stone	<i>lapid</i>	<i>lapidary, dilapidate</i>
Latus, carried	<i>late</i>	<i>dilate</i>
Latus, lateris, a side	<i>later</i>	<i>lateral</i>
Lego, I gather, I choose, lectus, gathered	<i>lege, lect</i>	<i>allege, collect</i>
Lenis, gentle	<i>leni</i>	<i>lenity</i>
Lentus, gentle	<i>lent</i>	<i>relent</i>
Levis, light	<i>levi</i>	<i>levity</i>
Lex, legis, a law	<i>leg, legis</i>	<i>legal, legislator</i>
Liber, a book	<i>libr</i>	<i>library</i>
Liber, free	<i>liber</i>	<i>liberty, liberal, liberate</i>
Libra, a balance	<i>libra, libr</i>	<i>libration, equilibrium</i>
Licet, it is lawful	<i>licit</i>	<i>illicit</i>
Lignum, wood	<i>lignum, lign</i>	<i>lignumvite, ligneous</i>
Ligo, I bind	<i>liga</i>	<i>ligament</i>
Linquo, I leave, relictus, left	<i>linqu, relict</i>	<i>relinquish, relict</i>
Liqueo, I melt	<i>lique</i>	<i>liquefaction</i>
Lis, litis, strife	<i>liti</i>	<i>litigious</i>
Litera, a letter	<i>litera</i>	<i>literal, literature</i>
Locus, a place	<i>loco, loc</i>	<i>locomotion, locality</i>
Loqui, to speak	<i>loqui, loquy, loqua, loqu, locu</i>	<i>colloquial, obloquy, loquacity, ventriloquy, elocution</i>
Ludo, I play, lusus, deceived	<i>ludi, lus</i>	<i>ludicrous, illusion</i>
Lumen, luminis, light	<i>lumin</i>	<i>luminary</i>
Luna, the moon	<i>luna</i>	<i>lunatic, sublunary</i>
Lux, lucis, light	<i>luci</i>	<i>lucid</i>
Macies, leanness	<i>maci</i>	<i>emaciate</i>
Macula, a spot	<i>macul</i>	<i>immaculate</i>
Magnus, great	<i>magni</i>	<i>magnify</i>
Male, wickedly	<i>male, mal</i>	<i>malevolent, malversation</i>

Root and Meaning.	Representative.	Example.
lando, I bid	<i>mand</i>	command, mandate
lando, I chew	<i>mand</i>	mandible
laneo, I stay	<i>man, main</i>	permanent, remain
lano, I flow	<i>man</i>	emanate
lanus, a hand	<i>manu</i>	manual
lare, the sea	<i>mar</i>	marine
later, matris, a mother	<i>mater, matri</i>	maternal, matricide
lcl, mellis, honey	<i>melli</i>	mellifluous
lior, better	<i>melior</i>	ameliorate
lens, mentis, the mind	<i>ment</i>	mental
largo, I plunge, mer-	<i>merge, mers</i>	emerge, immersion
us, plunged		
etior, I measure, men-	<i>mete, mensu</i>	mete, commensurate
us, measured		
ille, a thousand	<i>mill</i>	millennium
irror, I gaze	<i>mir, mire</i>	mirror, admire
iser, wretched	<i>miser</i>	miserable
itis, mild	<i>miti</i>	mitigate
itto, I send, missus,	<i>mit, miss</i>	remit, missionary
ent		
ola, a millstone, flour	<i>mol</i>	emolument
oles, a mass	<i>moles, mol</i>	molest, demolish
ollis, soft	<i>molli</i>	emollient, mollify
oneo, I warn, moni-	<i>mon, monit</i>	admonish, monitor
as, warned		
ors, mortis, death	<i>mort</i>	mortify, immortal
os, moris, a manner	<i>mor</i>	moral
ultus, many	<i>multi</i>	multiform
unio, I fortify	<i>muni</i>	munition
unus, muneris, a gift	<i>muner</i>	remunerate
urus, a wall	<i>mure</i>	immure
uto, I change	<i>mut</i>	mutable
atus, born	<i>nat</i>	native, natal
avis, a ship	<i>nav, navi</i>	naval, navigate
ecto, I tie, nexus,	<i>nect, nex</i>	connect, annex
tied		
go, I deny	<i>neg</i>	negative
hil, nothing	<i>nihil</i>	annihilate
mer, nominis, a name	<i>nomin</i>	denominate
on, not	<i>non</i>	nonentity
orma, a rule	<i>norm</i>	enormous
ovus, new	<i>nov</i>	innovate, novice
ox, noctis, night	<i>nox, noct</i>	equinox, nocturnal
ibo, I marry, nup-	<i>nub, nupt</i>	connubial, nuptials
is, married		
idus, naked	<i>nude</i>	denude
igae, trifles	<i>nuga</i>	nugatory

Root and Meaning.	Representative.	Example.
Numerus, a number	<i>numer</i>	numeration
Nuncio, I tell	<i>nunci, nounce</i>	annunciation, renounce
Nutrio, I nourish	<i>nutri</i>	nutriment
Octo, eight	<i>octa</i>	octagon
Oculus, the eye	<i>ocul</i>	oculist
Oleo, I smell	<i>ol</i>	olfactory, redolent
Omnis, all	<i>omni</i>	omnipotent
Onus, oneris, a burden	<i>oner</i>	onerous, exonerate
Opto, I wish	<i>opt</i>	adopt, option
Opus, operis, a work	<i>oper</i>	operose, operation
Orbis, a circle	<i>orbi</i>	orbicular
Orno, I deck	<i>orn, orna</i>	adorn, ornament
Oro, I beg	<i>ora</i>	inexorable, orator
Os, ossis, a bone	<i>ossi</i>	ossify
Os, oris, the mouth	<i>or</i>	oral, adoration
Otium, ease	<i>oti</i>	otiose, negotiate
Pactus, having bargained	<i>pact</i>	compact
Pando, I spread, passus, or pansus, spread	<i>pand, pass,panse</i>	expand, compass, expand
Pareo, I appear	<i>par</i>	apparent
Paro, I prepare	<i>par, pair</i>	reparation, repair
Pasco, I feed, pastus, fed	<i>past</i>	pastor
Pater, patris, a father	<i>pater, patri,parri</i>	paternal, patrimony, patricide
Patior, I suffer, passus, having suffered	<i>pati, pass</i>	patient, passive, passion
Pauci, few	<i>pauci</i>	paucity
Pax, pacis, peace	<i>paci</i>	pacific
Pecco, I sin	<i>pecca</i>	impeccable
Pectus, pectoris, the breast	<i>pector</i>	expectorate
Peculium, property	<i>pecul</i>	peculation
Pecunia, money	<i>pecunia</i>	pecuniary
Pello, I drive away, pulsus, driven	<i>pel, puls</i>	expel, repulsion
Pendo, I hang, pensus, hung	<i>pend, pens</i>	depend, pendulum, pensive
Pene, almost	<i>pen</i>	peninsula
Pes, pedis, the foot	<i>ped</i>	biped
Peto, I seek, petitus, sought	<i>pet, petit</i>	centripetal, competitia
Pingo, I paint, pictus, painted	<i>pinge, pict</i>	impinge, depict
Piscis, a fish, piscor, I fish	<i>pisca</i>	piscatory
Placo, I appease	<i>placa</i>	implacable

Root and Meaning.	Representative.	Example.
Plebs, the common people	<i>pleb</i>	<i>plebeian</i>
Plenus, full	<i>plen, pleni</i>	replenish, plenitude
Pleo, I fill, filled	<i>plete, plet, ply</i>	complete, expletive, supply
Plico, I fold	<i>plic</i>	complicate
Ploro, I wail	<i>plore</i>	deplore
Plumbum, lead	<i>plumb, plum</i>	plumber, plummet
Pono, I place, placed	<i>pone, pose, posit</i>	depone, impose, position
Populus, the people	<i>popul</i>	popular
Porto, I carry	<i>port</i>	export, portable
Poto, I drink	<i>pot</i>	portion
Praeda, plunder	<i>preda</i>	predatory, depredation
Pravus, wicked	<i>pravi</i>	depravity
Precor, I pray	<i>prec</i>	deprecate
Prehendo, I take, prehensum, taken	<i>prehend, prehens</i>	apprehend, comprehension
Pretium, a price	<i>preci</i>	appreciate
Probo, I prove	<i>prob</i>	probable
Pudens, pudentis, bashful	<i>pudent</i>	impudent
Puer, a boy	<i>puer</i>	puerile
Pugna, a fight	<i>pugna, pugn</i>	pugnacious, impugn
Puto, I think	<i>pute, put</i>	dispute, reputation
Putris, rotten	<i>putre</i>	putrefaction
Quaero, I ask, quaestus, sought	<i>quire, quest, quisit, quer</i>	inquire, inquest, requisition, query
Quassus (cussus when compounded), shaken	<i>cuss</i>	discuss
Quatuor, four	<i>quadr</i>	quadrangle
Queror, I complain	<i>quer</i>	querulous
Quinque, five	<i>quinqu</i>	quinquennial
Radix, radīcis, a root	<i>radic</i>	radical, eradicate
Rado, I scrape, rarus, scraped	<i>ras, rase</i>	razor, erase
Ramus, a branch	<i>rami</i>	ramification
Ratio, rationis, reason	<i>ration</i>	rational
Rectus, straight	<i>recti</i>	rectilinear
Rego, I rule, rectus, ruled	<i>reg, rect</i>	regal, rector
Rete, a net	<i>reti</i>	reticulate
Rideo, I laugh at, risus, laughed at	<i>ride, risi</i>	deride, risible
Rigo, I water	<i>rig</i>	irrigate
Rodo, I gnaw, rosus, gnawed	<i>rode, ros</i>	corrode, corrosion

Root and Meaning.	Representative.	Example.
Rota, a wheel	<i>rota</i>	<i>rotation</i>
Rumen, ruminis, the throat	<i>rumin</i>	<i>ruminate</i>
Ruptus, broken	<i>rupt</i>	<i>bankrupt, eruption</i>
Rus, ruris, the country	<i>rus, rur</i>	<i>rustic, rural</i>
Sacer, sacred	<i>sacri, seor</i>	<i>sacrifice, consecrate</i>
Sal, salt	<i>sal</i>	<i>saline</i>
Salio, I leap, saltus, leapt (silio and sultus when compounded)	<i>salī, sault, sile, sult</i>	<i>salient, assault, resist, insult</i>
Salvus, sound	<i>salv</i>	<i>salvation</i>
Sanctus, holy	<i>sancti</i>	<i>sanctify</i>
Satis, enough	<i>satis, sati</i>	<i>satisfy, satiate</i>
Satur, full	<i>satur</i>	<i>saturate</i>
Saxum, a rock	<i>saxi</i>	<i>saxifrage</i>
Scando, I climb	<i>scend</i>	<i>ascend</i>
Scindo, I cleave, scissus, cleft	<i>scind, sciss</i>	<i>rescind, rescissory, scissors</i>
Scio, I know	<i>sci</i>	<i>science, prescience</i>
Scribo, I write, scriptus, written	<i>scrib, script</i>	<i>inscribe, scripture</i>
Scrutor, I search	<i>scrut</i>	<i>scrutiny, inscrutable</i>
Scurra, a scoffer	<i>scurri</i>	<i>scurrility</i>
Seco, I cut, sectus, cut	<i>sect</i>	<i>dissect, sectarian</i>
Sedeo, I sit, sessus, sat	<i>side, sess, sed</i>	<i>preside, session, sedentary, assiduous</i>
Semen, seminis, seed	<i>semin</i>	<i>disseminate, seminar</i>
Semi, half	<i>semi</i>	<i>semicircle</i>
Senex, senis, old	<i>seni</i>	<i>senility</i>
Sentio, I feel, sensus, felt	<i>sent, sens</i>	<i>sentient, sensation, dissent</i>
Sequor, I follow, secutus, having followed	<i>sequ, secut</i>	<i>obsequies, subsequent, persecute</i>
Sidus, sideris, a star	<i>sider</i>	<i>sidereal</i>
Silva, a wood	<i>silv</i>	<i>silvan</i>
Similis, like	<i>simili</i>	<i>similitude</i>
Simulo, I feign	<i>simul</i>	<i>disimulation</i>
Socius, a companion	<i>soci</i>	<i>social</i>
Sol, the sun	<i>sol</i>	<i>solar, solstice</i>
Solor, I comfort	<i>sole</i>	<i>console</i>
Solus, alone	<i>solī</i>	<i>solitude, soliloquy</i>
Somnus, sleep	<i>somni</i>	<i>somniferous</i>
Sopor, soporis, sleep	<i>sopori</i>	<i>soporific</i>
Sorbeo, I suck in, sortus, sucked in	<i>sorb, sorpt</i>	<i>absorbent, absorption</i>
Sors, sortis, a lot	<i>sort</i>	<i>assort</i>

Root and Meaning.	Representative.	Example.
Spargo, I spread, spar- sus, spread (spergo and spersus when com- pounded)	<i>sperss</i>	<i>disperse</i>
Specio, I see, spectus, <i>speci</i> , <i>spect</i> seen		<i>specious, aspect</i>
Specula, a watch-tower, <i>specul</i> speculator, I watch		<i>speculate</i>
Spero, I hope	<i>sper, spair</i>	desperate, despair
Spiro, I breathe	<i>spir, spire</i>	respiration, <i>expire</i> ( <i>ecspire</i> ), conspiracy
Spondeo, I promise, <i>spond</i> , <i>sponse</i> sponsus, promised		respond, response
Stillo, I drop	<i>stil</i>	<i>distil</i>
Stinguo, I put out, stinc- tus, extinguished	<i>tingu, tinct</i>	extinguish, extinct
Stipula, a straw	<i>stipul</i>	<i>stipulate</i>
Stirps, the trunk of a tree, offspring	<i>stirp</i>	extirpate ( <i>ecstirpate</i> )
Sto, I stand, stans, <i>stat</i> , <i>stant</i> , <i>stice</i> standing, statum, to stand		<i>stature, distant, solstice</i>
Stringo, I hold fast, <i>string</i> , <i>strict</i> strictus, held fast		<i>astrigent, restrict</i>
Struo, I pile up, struc- tus, piled up	<i>struct, stroy</i>	<i>strus, structure, construs, de-</i> <i>stroy</i>
Stultus, a fool	<i>stult</i>	<i>stultify</i>
Suadeo, I advise, sua- sus, advised	<i>suade, suas</i>	dissuade, persuasive
Suavis, sweet	<i>suavi</i>	<i>suavity</i>
Sumo, I take, sumptus, taken	<i>sume, sumpt</i>	assume, consumption
Surgo, I rise, surrectus, risen	<i>surg, surrect</i>	insurgent, resurrection
Tango, I touch, tactus, touched	<i>tang, tact</i>	<i>tangent, contact</i>
Tardus, slow	<i>tard</i>	<i>retard</i>
Tectum, a covering	<i>tect</i>	<i>protect</i>
Tempus, temporis, time	<i>tempor</i>	<i>temporal, contemporary</i>
Tendo, I stretch, tentus, stretched	<i>tend, tent</i>	<i>dialend, tent, extent</i>
Teneo, I hold, tentus, held	<i>tain, tent</i>	contain, detention
Tenuis, thin	<i>tenui</i>	<i>tenuity</i>
Tepeo, I am warm	<i>tepe</i>	<i>tepefaction</i>
Tritus, rubbed	<i>trit</i>	<i>trituration</i>
Terra, the earth	<i>terra, ter</i>	<i>terraqeous, inter</i>



Root and Meaning.	Representative.	Example.
Testis, a witness	<i>testi, test</i>	<i>testify, attest</i>
Texo, I weave, textus, <i>text</i> woven		<i>texture, context</i>
Tollo, I lift up	<i>tol</i>	<i>extol</i>
Tortus, twisted	<i>tort</i>	<i>extort</i>
Traho, I draw, tractus, <i>trah, tract</i> drawn		<i>subtrahend, extract</i>
Trudo, I thrust, trusus, <i>trude, trus</i> thrust		<i>intrude, obtrusion</i>
Tueor, I look	<i>tuit</i>	<i>tuition, intuitive</i>
Turba, a crowd	<i>turb</i>	<i>turbulent, disturb</i>
Turpis, base	<i>turpi</i>	<i>turpitude</i>
Umbra, a shadow	<i>umbra, umbr</i>	<i>umbrageous, umbrell</i>
Unda, a wave	<i>unda, undu</i>	<i>inundate, undulate</i>
Uncius, anointed	<i>unct</i>	<i>unction</i>
Unus, one	<i>uni, un</i>	<i>uniform, unanimous</i>
Urbs, a city	<i>urbs, urb</i>	<i>suburbs, urban</i>
Ustus, burnt	<i>ust</i>	<i>combustion</i>
Utilis, useful	<i>utili</i>	<i>utility</i>
Uxor, a wife	<i>uxor</i>	<i>uxorious</i>
Vacca, a cow	<i>vacci</i>	<i>vaccination</i>
Vado, I go	<i>vad, vas</i>	<i>invade, invasion</i>
Vagor, I wander	<i>vaga, vagr</i>	<i>vagabond, vagrant</i>
Valeo, I am strong	<i>val, vail</i>	<i>prevalent, prevail</i>
Vasto, I lay waste	<i>vast</i>	<i>devastation</i>
Veho, I carry	<i>vehi, vey</i>	<i>vehicle, convey</i>
Vulsus, pulled	<i>vuls</i>	<i>convulsion</i>
Venio, I come, ventus, <i>vene, vent</i> come		<i>convene, advent</i>
Ver, the spring	<i>ver</i>	<i>vernal</i>
Verus, true	<i>ver, veri</i>	<i>aver, verity</i>
Verto, I turn, versus, <i>vert, vers</i> turned		<i>revert, divers, versed</i>
Vestis, a garment	<i>vest</i>	<i>vestment, invest</i>
Vetus, veteris, old	<i>veter</i>	<i>veteran</i>
Via, a way	<i>via, vi</i>	<i>obviate, obvious</i>
Video, I see, visus, <i>vide, visi</i> seen		<i>provide, visible</i>
Vigil, watchful	<i>vigil</i>	<i>vigilant</i>
Vinco, I conquer, vic- tus, conquered	<i>vinc, vict</i>	<i>invincible, victory</i>
Vita, life	<i>vita</i>	<i>vital</i>
Vivo, I live	<i>viv, vive</i>	<i>vivid, survive</i>
Voco, I call, vox, the voice, vocatus, called	<i>voc, vokes, vocat</i>	<i>irrevocable, revoke, "captive"</i>
Volo, I will, I wish	<i>vol</i>	<i>voluntary, benevolen</i>
Vola, I fly	<i>vol</i>	<i>volatile</i>

Root and Meaning.	Representative.	Example.
<b>Volvo</b> , I roll, volutus, rolled	<i>volvo, volut</i>	<i>revolve, revolution</i>
<b>Voro</b> , I devour	<i>vor</i>	<i>voracious, carnivorous</i>
<b>Vulgus</b> , the rabble	<i>vulg</i>	<i>vulgar, divulge</i>

LATIN ROOTS FOUND ONLY IN COMPOSITION, WHICH HAVE PASSED INTO ENGLISH THROUGH THE MEDIUM OF THE FRENCH.

Root and Meaning.	French.	Example.
<b>Campus</b> , a field	<i>Champ</i>	<i>Champaign</i>
<b>Carus</b> , dear	<i>Chère</i>	<i>Cherish</i>
<b>Diurnus</b> , daily	<i>Jour, a day</i>	<i>Adjourn</i>
<b>Lex</b> , law	<i>Loi</i>	<i>Loyal</i>
<b>Liberare</b> , to free	<i>Livrer</i>	<i>Deliver</i>
<b>Opus</b> , operis, a work	<i>Ouvre</i>	<i>Manœuvre</i>
<b>Rex</b> , regis, a king	<i>Roi</i>	<i>Royal, viceroy</i>
<b>Velo</b> , I cover	<i>Veloper</i>	<i>Envelop</i>

GREEK ROOTS FOUND ONLY IN COMPOSITION.

Root and Meaning.	Representative.	Example.
<b>Adelphos</b> , a brother	<i>adelph</i>	<i>philadelphia</i>
<b>Aethlos</b> , a combat	<i>athlet</i>	<i>athletic</i>
<b>Agogos</b> , a leader	<i>agogus</i>	<i>demagogue</i>
<b>Akouo</b> , I hear	<i>acous</i>	<i>acoustics</i>
<b>Anthos</b> , a flower	<i>antho</i>	<i>anthology</i>
<b>Anthropos</b> , a man	<i>anthrop</i>	<i>philanthropy</i>
<b>Aristos</b> , best	<i>aristo</i>	<i>aristocrat</i>
<b>Arithmos</b> , number	<i>arithm</i>	<i>arithmetic</i>
<b>Arché</b> , beginning, sovereignty	<i>arch</i>	<i>heptarchy, archbishop</i>
<b>Atmos</b> , vapour	<i>atmo</i>	<i>atmosphere</i>
<b>Autos</b> , self	<i>auto</i>	<i>autograph</i>
<b>Bapto</b> , I wash	<i>bapt</i>	<i>baptism</i>
<b>Baros</b> , weight	<i>baro</i>	<i>barometer</i>
<b>Biblion</b> , a book	<i>biblio</i>	<i>bibliography</i>
<b>Bios</b> , life	<i>bio</i>	<i>biography</i>
<b>Cheir</b> , the hand	<i>cheir</i>	<i>cheirography</i>
<b>Cholé</b> , bile	<i>cholé</i>	<i>choleric</i>
<b>Chronos</b> , time	<i>chrone</i>	<i>chronometer</i>
<b>Chrysos</b> , gold	<i>chryso</i>	<i>chrysolite</i>
<b>Deka</b> , ten	<i>deca</i>	<i>decalogue</i>
<b>Dendron</b> , a tree	<i>dendre, dendron</i>	<i>dendretic, rhododendron</i>
<b>Demos</b> , the people	<i>demo, dem</i>	<i>democracy, epidemic</i>

Root and Meaning.	Representative.	Example.
Dokeo, I think, doxo, I will think, dedogmai, I have been judged, doxé, an opinion	<i>dox, dogma</i>	<i>orthodox, dogmatize</i>
Dromos, a course	<i>drome</i>	<i>hippodrome</i>
Drus, an oak	<i>dru, dry</i>	<i>druid, dryad</i>
Dynamis, power	<i>dynam</i>	<i>dynamics</i>
Ethos, a custom	<i>ethi</i>	<i>ethical</i>
Eidos, a form	<i>eido</i>	<i>kaleidoscope</i>
Epos, a word	<i>ep</i>	<i>orthoepy</i>
Ergon, work	<i>erg</i>	<i>energetic</i>
Erēmos, a desert	<i>erem</i>	<i>hermit (hermit)</i>
Eu, well	<i>eu, ev</i>	<i>eulogy, evangelist</i>
Gamos, a marriage	<i>gam</i>	<i>bigamy</i>
Gaster, the belly	<i>gastr, gastro</i>	<i>gastric, gastronomy</i>
Gé, the earth	<i>geo</i>	<i>geography</i>
Geno, I produce	<i>gen</i>	<i>oxygen, hydrogen</i>
Genos, kind, or race	<i>gen</i>	<i>heterogeneous</i>
Glossa, glotta, the tongue	<i>glossa, glot</i>	<i>glossary, polyglot</i>
Gramma, a letter, writing	<i>gram</i>	<i>epigram, grammar</i>
Grapho, I write, graphé, a description	<i>graph</i>	<i>autograph, hydrograph</i>
Gyros, a circle	<i>gyr</i>	<i>gyration</i>
Gonia, a corner, angle	<i>angon</i>	<i>polygon</i>
Hagios, holy	<i>hagio</i>	<i>hagiography</i>
Hecaton, a hundred	<i>heca</i>	<i>hecatomb</i>
Hex, six	<i>hexa</i>	<i>hexagon</i>
Heteros, dissimilar	<i>hetero</i>	<i>heterodox</i>
Hepta, seven	<i>hepta</i>	<i>heptagon</i>
Helios, the sun	<i>helion</i>	<i>aphelion</i>
Hemēra, a day	<i>hemera</i>	<i>ephemeral</i>
Hieros, holy	<i>hier</i>	<i>hierarchy</i>
Hippos, a horse	<i>hippo</i>	<i>hippopotamus</i>
Hodos, a way	<i>od</i>	<i>exodus</i>
Homos, similar	<i>homo</i>	<i>homologous</i>
Hygros, wet	<i>hygro</i>	<i>hygrometer</i>
Hydor, water	<i>hydro</i>	<i>hydrostatics</i>
Isos, equal	<i>iso</i>	<i>isoperimetrical</i>
Ichthys, a fish	<i>ichthy</i>	<i>ichthyology</i>
Kakos, bad	<i>caco</i>	<i>cacophony</i>
Kalos, handsome	<i>kal</i>	<i>kaleidoscope</i>
Kalypto, I cover, kalypso, I will cover	<i>calypt, calypa</i>	<i>apocalyptic, apocalyp</i>
Kephale, the head	<i>cephal</i>	<i>hydrocephalus, cephal</i>

Root and Meaning.	Representative.	Example.
cosmos, the world, order	<i>cosm</i>	microcosm, cosmetic
cratos, strength	<i>crac, crat</i>	aristocracy, aristocratic
klos, a circle	<i>cycle</i>	epicycle
os, the people	<i>lai</i>	laity
hos, a stone	<i>litho, lite</i>	lithography, chrysolite
gos, a word, description	<i>logo, logy, logue</i>	logomachy, chronology
chê, a fight	<i>mach</i>	catalogue
tron, a measure	<i>metr, meter</i>	naumachy
ros, little	<i>micro</i>	geometry, thermometer
sos, hatred	<i>mis</i>	microscope
nos, alone	<i>mono</i>	misanthrope
rphe, shape	<i>morph</i>	monosyllable
thos, a fable	<i>mytho</i>	metamorphosis
us, a ship	<i>naut</i>	mythology
kros, dead	<i>necro</i>	nautical
os, new	<i>neo</i>	necromancy
nos, an island	<i>nesus</i>	neology
mos, a law	<i>nom</i>	Peloponnesus
nos, sickness	<i>noso</i>	astronomy
ceo, I dwell	<i>oeci, ochi</i>	nosology
gos, little, few	<i>olig</i>	antioeci, perioeci, paroecial
tomai, I see	<i>opti</i>	oligarchy
thos, right	<i>ortho</i>	optical
nis, ornithos, a bird	<i>ornitho</i>	orthography
his, a serpent	<i>ophi</i>	ornithology
ys, acid	<i>oxy</i>	ophiology
is, paidos, a boy	<i>ped</i>	oxygen
thos, feeling	<i>path</i>	pedagogue
nte, five	<i>pent</i>	apathy, antipathy
tros, a stone	<i>petra, petri</i>	pentagon
lemos, war	<i>polem</i>	petrology, petrification
leo, I sell	<i>pole</i>	polemical
lis, a city	<i>polis</i>	bibliopole
lys, many	<i>poly</i>	metropolis
amos, a river	<i>potamus</i>	polygon
r, pyros, fire	<i>pyro</i>	hippopotamus
ago, I eat	<i>phag</i>	pyrometer
thongos, a sound	<i>phithong</i>	anthropophagi
ilos, a friend	<i>phil</i>	diphthong
obeo, I terrify	<i>phob</i>	philanthropy
ren, the mind	<i>phren</i>	hydrophobia
onê, the voice	<i>phon</i>	phrenology, phrensy
udo, I deceive	<i>pseudo</i>	euphony
		pseudo-apostle

Root and Meaning.	Representative.	Example.
Sarks, sarkos, flesh, the body	<i>sarco</i>	<i>sarcophagus</i>
Sitos, corn	<i>sit</i>	<i>parasite</i>
Skopeo, I see	<i>scope</i>	<i>telescope</i>
Sophos, wise	<i>soph</i>	<i>sophist, philosophy</i>
Stello, I send	<i>stle</i>	<i>apostle</i>
Strepho, I turn	<i>streph</i>	<i>peristrephic</i>
Telè, distant	<i>telè</i>	<i>telescope</i>
Technè, art	<i>techn</i>	<i>technical</i>
Tithemi, I put, I suppose, thesis, a position	<i>thesis, thet</i>	<i>hypothesis, hypothesis</i>
Topos, a place	<i>topo</i>	<i>topography</i>
Thapto, I bury	<i>taph</i>	<i>epitaph</i>
Theos, God	<i>the, thus</i>	<i>atheist, enthusiast</i>
Zoon, an animal	<i>zoo, zo</i>	<i>zoology, ascote</i>

The Prepositions and Conjunctions are the most difficult words in the English language to trace their origin, as well as the most irregular in the changes which they have undergone.

Formerly it was the practice of grammarians to describe these parts of speech rather as the pegs and nails that fasten the several parts of the language together than as parts of the language itself.\* But since the researches of Henry Tooke and Dr John Hunter have thrown light on the history, it is universally held that they are abbreviations, corruptions, or combinations of other words, especially verbs and nouns.

The leading prepositions are of Saxon origin. Thus, *After* is from *aft*, the hind or back part of a thing; it is disused except by seamen.

*About* is from *abuta*, the verge or extremity of a thing.

*Above* is from *ufa*, high.

*Amid* or *amidst* is compounded of *a*, on or in, and *mid*, the middle.

*Among* is from *gemong*, mixed, the perfect participle *mangan*, to mix.

*Before* is compounded of the imperative *be* and the prejective *fore*.

---

\* This is the language even of Monboddio, the most philosopher of our old grammarians.

*Behind* is compounded of the imperative *be* and the adjective *hind*.

*Below* is compounded of the imperative *be* and the adjective *low*.

*Beneath* is compounded of the imperative *be* and the adjective *neath*, *low* (from whence *nether* and *nethermost*).

*Beside* or *besides* is compounded of the imperative *be* and the noun *side*.

*Between* is compounded of the imperative *be* and the numeral adjective *twain*.

*Beyond* is compounded of the imperative *be* and *goned*, the perfect participle of *gan*, to go.

*By*\* is the imperative of *beon*, to be.

*For* is from *foran*, passing towards, consequence or object ; as, " they contend *for* victory ;" that is, the consequence or object being victory.

*From* is from *frum*, beginning or source ; as, " Figs come *from* Turkey ;" that is, the source or beginning being Turkey.

*Near* and *nigh* are the adjectives *neahr*, *nih*, contiguous.

*Of*† (generally pronounced *ov*) is from *have*, to possess ; as, " The city *of* David ;" that is, possessed by David.

*Over* is from *ufer*, the comparative of *ufa*, high ; as, " He stood *over* me ;" that is, *higher* than I. *Up*, *upper*, *uppermost*, have the same origin.

*Save* is the imperative of the verb *save*.

*Through* is from *thuruh*, a door or gate ; as, " The eagle flies *through* the air ;" that is, the air being the passage. *Thorough* is of the same origin ; also *door*.

\* Our ancestors wrote either *be* or *by* ; as, " Damville *be* right ought to have the leading of the army." The force of this preposition is to express one thing as the cause or means of another ; as, " Damville *by* right," that is, *right being*, " ought to have the leading of the army."—TOOKE.

† *Of* is so vague in its signification, that it may be used for many of the other prepositions. Thus, we can say, a descendant *of* or *from* ; a friend *of* or *to* ; hatred *of* or *for* ; an associate *of* or *with* ; beloved *of* or *by*, &c. But *possession* is probably its original signification, in common with that of the termination of the possessive case, to which it is equivalent.

*Till* is compounded of the preposition *to* and *while*, time.

*To* is the same originally with *do*, and signifies act or completion of an act. It is opposed to *from*, the beginning ; as, " Figs come *from* Turkey *to* England ;" that is, Turkey being the beginning, England the finishing or end.

*Toward* is compounded of *to* and *ward*, the imperative of *wardian*, to look at ; as, " I move *towards* the city ;" that is, with my view directed to the city. *Ward*, to guard, is of the same origin.

*With* is the imperative of *withan*, to join ; as, " A house *with* a party wall ;" that is, " A house, *join* a party wall."

*Without* is from *withutan*, the imperative of *wyrthan-utan*, to be out. *Withouten* occurs as a preposition in old English writers, and is still used in Scottish poetry.

The leading Conjunctions are also of Saxon origin. Thus,

*And* is an abbreviation of *anad*, the imperative of *ananad*, to add ; as, " Two *and* two make four ;" that is, " Two *add* two make four."

*As* is the same with *es*, equal.

*But* is from *bot*, the imperative of *botan*, to superadd ; as, " I came expecting to find you, *but* I was disappointed ;" that is, " *Add* I was disappointed." " To boot" is of the same origin. The preposition *but* is an abbreviation of *be out*, or *by out*, and signifies *unless* or *except* ; as, " I saw nobody *but* John ;" that is, " unless" or " except" John.

*Either* is the same with the adjective *either*, one of two ; as, " It is *either* day or night ;" that is, " One of the two, day or night."

*Eke* is the imperative of *eke*, to add ; as, " John Gilpin was a citizen ; a train-band captain *eke* was he ;" that is, " *Add*, a train-band captain was he."

*Else* is the imperative of *alesan*, to dismiss ; as, " Give me the book, or *else* I will go ;" that is, " *Omit* to give me the book, and I will go."

*If* is from the imperative *gif* or *gifan*, to give or grant ; as, " *If* I go ;" that is, " *Gif* or *give*, suppose, grant, that I go."

*Lest* is contracted for *lesed*, the participle of *lesan*, to dis-

miss ; as, "Take care *lest* you fall ;" that is, "Take care ; *this being dismissed*, you fall."

Or is a contraction for the numeral adjective *other* ; as, "Give me *either* the black or the white ;" that is, "Give me *one of the two*—the black, *other* the white."

*Since* is the participle of *seon*, to see, and is equivalent to *seeing* ; as, "Since it is so ;" that is, "*Seeing* it is so."

*Still* is from *stell*, the imperative of *stellan*, to suppose ; as, "Though I desired him to depart, *still* he is not gone ;" that is, "*Suppose* or *remark*, he is not gone."

*That* is from *theat*, the perfect participle of *thean*, to assume or suppose ; as, "I believe *that* your statement is correct ;" that is, "I believe *the thing assumed*, viz. your statement, is correct." *That* is conveniently considered as alike a numeral adjective, a relative pronoun, and a conjunction ; but it is in all cases originally and really a participle or adjective.

*Then* is from the present participle of *thean*, to assume or suppose ; as, "So *then*, they that are in the flesh cannot please God ;" that is, "So, *assuming what has been just advanced*, they that are in the flesh cannot please God."

*Though* is from the imperative of *thohte*,\* to think or suppose ; as, "Though he was learned, he was modest ;" that is, "*Suppose* he was learned."

*Unless* is from *onles*, the imperative of *onlesan*, to dismiss ; as, "Unless ye repent, ye shall all likewise perish ;" that is, "*Dismiss the supposition*—ye repent, ye shall likewise perish."

*Yet* is from the imperative of *getan*, to get ; as, "Though he slay me, *yet* will I trust in him ;" that is, "Suppose he slay me, *get or obtain this*, I will trust in him."

### ENGLISH DERIVATIVES.

English Derivatives are formed chiefly by attaching to the Root, or essential part of a word, certain *Prefixes* and *Affixes*.

---

\* This account of *though* is from Dr Jamieson, who says that the form in which it occurs in our most ancient MSS. is *thocht* and *elthocht*. Tooke derives it from the imperative of *thafian*, to allow.



A *Prefix* is a significant particle placed before a root to vary its sense ; as, *superstructure*, *rebuild*.

An *Affix* or *termination* is a significant particle added to the root to vary its signification ; as, *plentiful*, *darkish*.

A derivative formed by means of a prefix is always of the same part of speech with its root, provided that root exist as a separate word in the language ; as, *turn*, *return* ; *navigation*, *circumnavigation*.

A derivative formed by means of an affix has the part of speech to which it belongs determined by the affix rather than by the root ; as, *life*, *lifeless* ; *brother*, *brotherly*.

Prefixes are chiefly prepositions, and are of as great diversity of origin as the roots which they modify.

The following are the prefixes of purely English or Saxon origin, with their import :—

*A* signifies *on* or *in* ; as, *a-foot*, that is, *on foot* ; *a-bed*, that is, *in bed*.

*Be* signifies *about* ; as, *besprinkle*, that is, *sprinkle about* ; also *for* or *before* ; as, *bespeak*, that is, *speak for* or *before*.

*En* signifies *in* or *on* ; as, *encircle*, that is, *circle in* ; also *make* ; as, *enfeeble*, that is, *make feeble*. (*En* is changed into *em* in roots beginning with *b* or *p* ; as, *embark*, *empower*.)

*Fore* signifies *before* ; as, *foresee*, that is, *see beforehand*.

*Mis* denotes *error* or *defect* ; as, *misdeed*, that is, *a wrong* or *evil deed*.

*Out* denotes *excess* or *superiority* ; as, *outrun*, that is, *surpass in running*.

*Over* denotes *eminence* or *excess* ; as, *overcharge*, that is, *to charge too much*.

*Un*, before an adjective or adverb, signifies *not* ; as, *unworthy*, that is, *not worthy* ; *un*\*, before a verb, signifies the *undoing* of the act expressed by the verb ; as, *unfetter*, that is, *to take off fetters*.

---

\* *Un* is sometimes prefixed to a verb without altering the sense : as, *loose*, *unloose*.

*Up* denotes motion upwards ; as, *upstart* ;—also *subversion* ; as, *upset*.

*With* signifies *from* or *against* ; as, *withdraw*, that is, *draw from* ; *withstand*, that is, *stand against*.

The following are the prefixes of Latin origin, with their import :—

*A, ab, abs*, signify *from* or *away* ; as, *avert*, that is, *turn from* ; *absolve*, that is, *loose from* ; *abstain*, that is, *hold from*.

*Ad* signifies *to* ; as, *adhere*, that is, *stick to*. (*Ad* assumes the various forms of *a, ac, af, ag, al, an, ap, ar, as, at*, according to the commencing letter of the root with which it is joined ; as, *ascend, accede, affix, aggrandize, allot, annex, appeal, arrest, assume, attract*.)

*Ante* signifies *before* ; as, *antecedent*, that is, *going before*.

*Circum* signifies *round* or *about* ; as, *circumnavigate*, that is, *sail round*.

*Cis* signifies *on this side* ; as, *cisalpine*, that is, *on this side the Alps*.

*Con* signifies *together* ; as, *convoke*, that is, *call together*. (*Con* takes also the various forms of *co, cog, col, com, cor* ; as, *co-operate, cognate, collect, commotion, correlative*.)

*Contra* signifies *against* ; as, *contradict*, that is, *speak against*. (*Contra* sometimes takes the form *counter* ; as, *counterbalance*.)

*De* signifies *down* ; as, *deject*, that is, *cast down*.

*Dis* signifies *asunder* ; as, *distract*, that is, *draw asunder* ; also *negation* or *undoing* ; as, *disarm*, that is, *take arms from*. (*Dis* has also the forms of *di* and *dif* ; as, *diverge, diffuse*.)

*E, ex*, signify *out of* ; as, *egress*, that is, *going out* ; *exclude*, that is, *shut out*. (*E, ex*, take also the form of *ec, ef* ; as, *eccentric, efflux*.)

*Extra* signifies *beyond* ; as, *extraordinary*, that is, *beyond ordinary*.

*In*, before an adjective, signifies *not* ; as, *inactive*, that is, *not active* ; *in*, before a verb, signifies *in* or *into* ; as, *inject*, that is, *throw in* or *into*. (*In* has also the various forms of *ig, il, im, ir* ; as, *ignoble, illuminate, import, irradiate*.)

*Inter* signifies *between* ; as, *intervene*, that is, *come between*.

*Intro* signifies *to within* ; as, *introduce*, that is, *lead within*.

*Juxta* signifies *nigh to* ; as, *juxtaposition*, that is, *position nigh to* (a thing).

*Ob* signifies *in the way of or opposition* ; as, *obstacle*, that is, *something standing in the way*. (*Ob* also has the various forms of *oc*, *of*, *o*, *op* ; as, *occur*, *offend*, *omit*, *oppose*.)

*Per* signifies *through or thoroughly* ; as, *perforate*, that is, *bore through* ; *perfect*, that is, *thoroughly done*.

*Post* signifies *after* ; as, *postdiluvian*, that is, *after the flood*.

*Pre*, or *præ*, signifies *before* ; as, *predict*, that is, *tell before*.

*Preter*, or *præter*, signifies *past or beyond* ; as, *præternatural*, that is, *beyond the course of nature*.

*Pro* signifies *for, forth, or forward* ; as, *pronoun*, that is, *for a noun* ; *provoke*, that is, *call forth* ; *proceed*, that is, *go forward*.

*Re* signifies *back or again* ; as, *retract*, that is, *draw back* ; *rebuild*, that is, *build again*.

*Retro* signifies *backwards* ; as, *retrospect*, that is, *a looking backwards*.

*Se* signifies *aside or apart* ; as, *secede*, that is, *go aside or apart*.

*Sine* signifies *without* ; as, *sinecure*, that is, *without care or labour*. (*Sine* also has the form of *sim* and *sin* ; as, *simple* (without a fold) ; *sincere* (without mixture).)

*Sub* signifies *under or after* ; as, *sub-beadle*, that is, *under-beadle*. (*Sub* has also the forms of *suc*, *suf*, *sug*, *sup*, *sus* (contracted for *subs*) ; as, *succeed*, *suffuse*, *suggest*, *suppress*, *suspend*.)

*Subter* signifies *under or beneath* ; as, *subterfuge*, that is, *a flying under, a shift*.

*Super* signifies *above or over* ; as, *superfluous*, that is, *flowing over or above*. (*Super* has also the French form *sur* ; as, *surmount*.)

*Trans* signifies *over from one place to another* ; as, *transport*, that is, *carry over*.

*Ultra* signifies *beyond* ; as, *ultra mundane*, that is, *beyond the world*.

The following are the prefixes of Greek origin, with their import.

*A* or *an* signifies *without* or *privation* ; as, *apathy*, that is, *want of feeling* ; *anonymous*, that is, *without a name*.

*Amphi* signifies *both* or *the two* ; as, *amphibious*, that is, *having both lives*, or *capable of living both in land and water*.

*Ana* signifies *through* or *up* ; as, *anatomy*, that is, *a cutting through* or *up*.

*Anti* signifies *against* ; as, *Antichrist*, that is, *opposed to Christ*. (*Anti* has sometimes the contracted form of *ant* ; as, *antarctic*, *opposite to the arctic* or *north*.)

*Apo* signifies *from* or *away* ; as, *apostasy*, that is, *a standing* or *departure from*. (*Apo* has sometimes the contracted form of *ap* ; as, *aphelion*, *away from the sun*.)

*Cata* signifies *down* ; as, *catarrh*, that is, *a flowing down*, *a slight cold*.

*Dia* signifies *through* ; as, *diaphanous*, that is, *appearing through*, *transparent*.

*Epi* signifies *upon* ; as, *epitaph*, that is, *upon a tombstone*.

*Hyper* signifies *over* and *above* ; as, *hypercritical*, that is, *over* or *too critical*.

*Hypo* signifies *under* ; as, *hypothesis*, that is, *a placing under*, *a supposition*.

*Meta* denotes *change* ; as, *metamorphosis*, that is, *a change of shape*.

*Para* signifies *near to*, or *side by side as if for the purpose of comparison*, and hence sometimes *similarity*, and sometimes *contrariety* ; as, *parody*, *a poem imitated from another* ; *paradox*, *an opinion contrary to the general opinion*.

*Pert* signifies *round about* ; as, *periphrasis*, that is, *a round about mode of speaking*, *a circumlocution*.

*Syn* signifies *together* ; as, *synthesis*, that is, *a placing together*. (*Syn* has also the forms *sy*, *syl*, *sym* ; as, *system*, *sylogism*, *sympathy*.)

The *Affixes* have probably, in common with the *Prefixes*, considerable diversity of origin ; but their origin, as well as their import, it is more difficult to ascertain.

The following are those which most frequently occur:—

<i>An</i> <i>Ant</i> <i>Ar</i> <i>Ard</i> <i>Her</i> <i>Ent</i> <i>Er</i> <i>Ist</i> <i>Ive</i> <i>Or</i> <i>Ster</i>	} denoting the <i>agent</i> or <i>doer</i> of a thing.	<i>Ac</i> <i>Al</i> or <i>ical</i> <i>An</i> <i>Ar</i> <i>Ary</i> <i>En</i> <i>Ic</i> <i>Ile</i> <i>Ine</i>	} denoting of a <i>pertaining to</i> .
<i>Ate</i> <i>Ec</i> <i>Ite</i>	} denoting the <i>person acted</i> <i>upon</i> and equivalent to the <i>passive termination ed</i> .	<i>Ful</i> <i>Ose</i> <i>Ous</i> <i>Some</i> <i>Y</i>	} denoting <i>full of</i> or <i>abundance</i> .
<i>Acy</i> <i>Age</i> <i>Ance</i> <i>Ancy</i> <i>Ence</i> <i>Ency</i> <i>Hood</i> <i>Ion</i> <i>Isn</i> <i>Mcnt</i> <i>Ness</i> <i>Ship</i> <i>Th</i> <i>Tude</i> <i>Ty</i> or <i>ity</i> <i>Ure</i> <i>Y</i>	} denoting <i>being</i> <i>or state of be-</i> <i>ing taken ab-</i> <i>stractly</i> .	<i>Ish</i> <i>Like</i> <i>Ly</i>	} denoting <i>likeness</i> .
		<i>Ive</i>	} denoting <i>capacity in</i> <i>active sense</i> .
		<i>Able</i> <i>Ible</i>	} denoting <i>capacity in</i> <i>passive sense</i> .
		<i>Less</i>	denoting <i>privation</i> .
		<i>Ish</i>	} denoting a <i>smaller</i> <i>gree of</i> .
<i>Dom</i> <i>Ric</i>	} denoting <i>jurisdiction</i> .	<i>Ate</i> <i>En</i> <i>Fy</i> <i>Ise</i> <i>Ize</i>	} denoting <i>to make</i> .
<i>Cle</i> <i>Kin</i> <i>Let</i> <i>Ling</i> <i>Lock</i>	} diminutive termina- <i>tions</i> .	<i>Ly</i> <i>Ward</i>	} denoting <i>like in quality</i> <i>in the di-</i> <i>tion of</i> .

The parts of speech which are formed from radical words by means of affixes are, the Noun, the Adjective, the Verb, and the Adverb.

Nouns denoting the *agent*, or *doer* of a thing, are formed from nouns and verbs denoting the act, by adding the affixes *a*, *ant*, *ar*, *ard*, *eer*, *ent*, *er*, *ist*, *ive*, *or*, or *ster*. Thus,

From Guard	guardian	From Bake	baker
Assist	assistant	Murder	murderer
Beg	beggar	Conform	conformist
Dote	dotard	Operate	operative
Chariot	charioteer	Inspect	inspector
Adhere	adherent	Pun	punster

Nouns denoting the *person acted upon* are formed from nouns and verbs denoting the act or object, by adding the affixes *ee*, *ee*, *ite* ; as,

From Potent	potentate	From Bedlam	bedlamite
Trust	trustee	Favour	favourite

Nouns ending in the affixes *er* or *or*, and *ee*, are used in opposition—the former denoting the agent, the latter the person acted upon ; as, *assigner*, *assignee* ; *indorser*, *indorsee*.

Nouns denoting *being*, or *state of being*, are formed from nouns, verbs, and adjectives, by adding *acy*, *age*, *ance*, *ancy*, *ice*, *ency*, *hood*, *ion*, *ism*, *ment*, *ness*, *ship*, *th*, *tude*, *ty* or *ity*, *re*, and *y* ; as,

From Pirate	piracy	From Condole	condolence
Conspire	conspiracy	Abstinent	abstinence
Intricate	intricacy	Agent	agency
Bond	bondage	Emerge	emergency
Dote	dotage	Decent	decency
Repent	repentance	Boy	boyhood
Fragrant	fragrance	Likely	likelihood
Expectant	expectancy	Exhaust	exhaustion
Flagrant	flagrancy	Contrite	contrition
Adherent	adherence	Despot	despotism

From Parallel	parallelism	From Apt	aptitude
Achieve	achievement	Loyal	loyalty
Merry	merriment	Absurd	absurdity
Acute	acuteness	Durable	durability
Friend	friendship	Disclose	disclosure
Deep	depth	Master	mastery
Grow	growth	Jealous	jealousy

*Nouns denoting jurisdiction* are formed from nouns or adjectives, by adding *dom* or *ric* ; as,

From King	kingdom
Bishop	bishopric

*Diminutive Nouns* are formed from the names of persons or things, by adding *cle*, *kin*, *let*, *ling*, *lock* ; as,

From Corpus	corpuscle	From Duck	duckling
Lamb	lambkin	Hill	hillock
Stream	streamlet		

*ADJECTIVES* denoting *of or pertaining to a thing* are formed from the name of the thing described, by adding *ac*, *al* or *ian*, *ar*, *ary*, *en*, *ic*, *ile*, *ine* ; as,

From Elegy	elegiac	From Moment	momentary
Autumn	autumnal	Wood	wooden
Canon	canonical	Angel	angelic
Republic	republican	Infant	infantile
Consul	consular	Adamant	adamantine

*Adjectives denoting abundance* are formed from the name of the property, by adding *ful*, *ose*, *ous*, *some*, *y* ; as,

From Hope	hopeful	From Glad	gladsome
Globe	globose	Pith	pithy
Hazard	hazardous		

*Adjectives denoting likeness* are formed from nouns, by adding *ish*, *like*, *ly* ; as,

From Child	childish
Saint	saintlike
Maiden	maidenly

*Adjectives denoting capacity in an active sense* are formed from verbs, by adding *ive* ; as,

From Accumulate    accumulative

Adjectives denoting *capacity in a passive sense* are formed from nouns or verbs, by adding *able, ible* ; as,

From Detest        detestable    |    From Contempt contemptible

Adjectives denoting *privation* are formed from the name of the thing *wanting*, by adding *less* ; as,

From Art        artless        |        From Cause    causeless

*Diminutive* Adjectives are formed from other adjectives, by adding *ish* ; as,

From Dark    darkish

VERBS involving the idea of *to make* as a part of their signification are formed from nouns and adjectives, by adding *ate, en, fy, ise* or *ize*.

From Alien	alienate	From Type	typify
Perpetual	perpetuate	Pure	purify
Length	lengthen	Epitome	epitomise
Black	blacken	Equal	equalize

Verbs ending in *en* are generally of Saxon origin, *en* or *an* being, in that language, the sign of the infinitive.

Verbs ending in *ate* are generally of Latin origin ; but the distinguishing characteristic of verbs of Latin origin is, that they always form their past tense and perfect participle in *d* or *ed*, and are not in this respect subject to the same irregularities with those which are derived from the Saxon.

ADVERBS denoting *quality* are formed from adjectives, by adding *ly* ; as,

From Abrupt    abruptly

Adverbs denoting *in the direction of* are formed from nouns, adjectives, and other adverbs, by adding *ward* ; as,

From Home	homeward
West	westward
On	onward

The English language has, in many instances, two sets of Derivative words expressive of the same



thing, the one of Saxon, and the other of Latin origin. Thus,

SAXON.	LATIN.	SAXON.	LATIN.
Fearful	Timid	Height	Altitude
Swiftness	Velocity	Lifeless	Exanimate
Womanish	Effeminate	Yearly	Annual
Building	Edifice	Watery	Aqueous
Fewness	Paucity	Hearer	Auditor

The best specimens of pure unmixed Saxon are probably to be found in "The Bible"\* and in "The Pilgrim's Progress." Dr Johnson's writings afford the best specimens of Latinized English. The Latinized style is the more sounding, the Saxon the more forcible.

English nouns are often of Saxon origin, while the corresponding adjectives are derived from the Latin.

The number of our inseparable roots being so great, it necessarily happens that a considerable proportion of our derivatives come *directly* from other languages, without having any corresponding primitives in English. But in no class of words is this so apparent as in adjectives formed directly from Latin nouns.†

\* Of the fifty-eight words of which the Lord's Prayer is composed, there are only three which are not immediately derivable from the Saxon.

† "In English, instead of *adjectiving* our own nouns, we have borrowed, in immense numbers, *adjectived* signs from other languages, without borrowing the unadjectived signs of these same ideas; because our authors found they had occasion for the former but not for the latter. And, not understanding the nature of language, or the nature of the very benefit they were receiving, they did not improve their own language by the same contrivance within itself, but borrowed from other languages abbreviations ready made to their hands. Thus, instead of turning such nouns as *finger*, *mind*, *life*, *skin*, &c., into adjectives, they adopted adjectives formed from the corresponding nouns in other languages; as, *digital*, *mental*, *vital*, *cutaneous*, &c. This practice is the more to be lamented, as it has rendered the English language very difficult to be acquired. For, as the matter now stands, when a poor foreigner has learned all the names of things in the English tongue, he must go to other languages for the *adjectived* names of the same

The following are those which most frequently occur :—

Nouns from Saxon.	Adjectives from Latin.	
Beginning	Initial	from <i>initium</i>
Body	Corporal	<i>corpus</i>
Boundary	Conterminous	<i>conterminus</i>
Boy	Puerile	<i>puer</i>
Breast	Pectoral	<i>pectus</i>
Brother	Fraternal	<i>frater</i>
Burden	Onerous	<i>onus</i>
Carcass	Cadaverous	<i>cadaver</i>
Cat	Feline	<i>felis</i>
Country	{ Rural } { Rustic }	<i>rus</i>
Cow	Vaccine	<i>vacca</i>
Day	Diurnal	<i>dies</i>
Death	Mortal	<i>mors</i>
Degree	Gradual	<i>gradus</i>
Disease	Morbid	<i>morbus</i>
Dog	Canine	<i>canis</i>
Ear	Auricular	<i>auris</i>
Earth	Terrestrial	<i>terra</i>
End	Final	<i>finis</i>
Enemy	Hostile	<i>hostis</i>
Eye	Ocular	<i>oculus</i>
Father	Paternal	<i>pater</i>
Fault	Culpable	<i>culpa</i>
Field	Agrarian	<i>ager</i>
Finger	Digital	<i>digitus</i>
Fire	Igneous	<i>ignis</i>
Flesh	Carnal	<i>caro</i>
Flock	Gregarious	<i>grex</i>
Flour	Farinaceous	<i>farina</i>
Glass	Vitreous	<i>vitrum</i>
Grief	Dolorous	<i>dolor</i>
Guardianship	{ Tutelar } { Tutelary }	<i>tutela</i>

ings. And even an unlearned native can never understand the meaning of one quarter of that which is called his native tongue."—  
ORNE TOOKE.

Nouns from Saxon.	Adjectives from Latin.	
Hair	Capillary	from <i>capillus</i>
Hand	Manual	<i>manus</i>
Hatred	Odious	<i>odium</i>
Head	Capital	<i>caput</i>
Health	{ Salubrious }	<i>salus</i>
	{ Salutary }	
Heart	Cordial	<i>cor</i>
Heaven	Celestial	<i>cælum</i>
Help	Auxiliary	<i>auxilium</i>
Hire	Mercenary	<i>merces</i>
Horse	Equestrian	<i>equus</i>
House	Domestic	<i>domus</i>
Ice	Glacial	<i>glacies</i>
Island	Insular	<i>insula</i>
King	Regal	<i>rex</i>
Kitchen	Culinary	<i>culina</i>
Law	Legal	<i>lex</i>
Life	Vital	<i>vita</i>
Light	Lucid	<i>lux</i>
Light	Luminous	<i>lumen</i>
Lion	Leonine	<i>leo</i>
Love	Amorous	<i>amor</i>
Lungs	Pulmonary	<i>pulmo</i>
Man	Human	<i>homo</i>
Mind	Mental	<i>mens</i>
Money	Pecuniary	<i>pecunia</i>
Moon	Lunar	<i>luna</i>
Mother	Maternal	<i>mater</i>
Mouth	Oral	<i>os</i>
Night	Nocturnal	<i>nox</i>
Nose	Nasal	<i>nasus</i>
Pitch	Bituminous	<i>bitumen</i>
Place	Local	<i>locus</i>
Point	Punctual	<i>punctum</i>
Priest	Sacerdotal	<i>sacerdos</i>
Rabble	Vulgar	<i>vulgus</i>
Reason	Rational	<i>ratio</i>
Ring		<i>annulus</i>
Rival		<i>emulus</i>

Nouns from Saxon.	Adjectives from Latin.	
Root	Radical	from <i>radix</i>
Rule	Regular	<i>regula</i>
Sea	{ Marine } { Maritime }	<i>mare</i>
Shepherd	Pastoral	<i>pastor</i>
Shoulder	Humeral	<i>humerus</i>
Side	Lateral	<i>latus</i>
Sight	Visual	<i>visus</i>
Soldier	Military	<i>miles</i>
Spring	Vernal	<i>ver</i>
Star	Stellar	<i>stella</i>
Strength	Robust	<i>robur</i>
Sun	Solar	<i>sol</i>
Theft	Furtive	<i>furtum</i>
Thigh	Femoral	<i>femur</i>
Tooth	Dental	<i>dens</i>
Treaty	Federal	<i>foedus</i>
War	Martial	<i>mars</i>
Water	Aqueous	<i>aqua</i>
Whale	Cetaceous	<i>cete</i>
Will	Voluntary	<i>voluntas</i>
Woman	Effeminate	<i>femina</i>
Wood	Sylvan	<i>sylva</i>
World	Mundane	<i>mundus</i>
Year	Annual	<i>annus</i>

Some derivatives, from contraction, change of cog-  
ate letters, and similar causes, have undergone such  
iterations, that their origin is scarcely discernible.

Thus, *curfew*, the evening-bell (literally, cover-fire), is  
an abbreviation of *cover* and *feu* (fire), because it was the  
signal for extinguishing fires.

*Quiver*, that which holds or covers arrows, is another form  
of *cover*.

*Proxy*, one who is deputed to supply the place of an-  
other, is a contraction of *procuracy* (compounded of *pro*,  
for, and *cura*, care).

The two points which determine the affinity of words in respect of origin, are identity of letters and identity of signification, or letters of the same organ, and a signification obviously deducible from the same sense.

## II. PRIMARY SIGNIFICATION OF WORDS.\*

Language being intended for the communication of thought, the words of which it consists must each have a certain signification.

There does not seem to be any necessary connexion between words and the thoughts they express. They appear to have become significant merely by usage; and it is now impossible to say in what manner the conventional connexion between the sign and the thing signified was at first established.

Originally all words seem to have been applied in one sense only.

---

\* The pupil should be cautioned against the error of supposing, that the *present meaning* of words is to be acquired by learning the history of their pedigree. It is from established usage, not etymology, that the precise meaning of words must be gathered. Etymology is a deceitful guide in questions about the propriety or impropriety of expressions. The instances are few indeed, as is well remarked by Dugald Stewart, in which Etymology furnishes effectual aids to guide us in fixing the exact signification of ambiguous terms, or in drawing the line between expressions which seem to be nearly equivalent. In such cases, nothing can be safely trusted to but that habit of accurate induction, which, by the study of the most approved models, elicits gradually and insensibly the precise notions which our best authors have annexed to their phraseology. Etymological researches are, however, of great use. Independently of their being calculated to gratify a natural and liberal curiosity, they furnish important data for illustrating the migrations of mankind, and the progress of laws, of arts, and of commerce; they throw light on peculiar constructions (see note on the syntax of *it*, Rule VI.), and they enable a man to obtain a familiarity with the general meaning, as well as to acquire a mastery over the use of his language which no other study can impart.

After being introduced into a language, words are ten employed in different and successive meanings.

The same bias which leads man to enrich language rather by the modification of words already in use than by the creation of new ones, leads him also to prefer using an old word in a new sense to the coining of an additional term.

The words *charity*, *conversation*, *offence*, *prevent*, are instances of words applied in the successive acceptations at different periods of time.

*Charity* is used in Scripture as synonymous with *love* ; it is now very much restricted to *liberality to the poor*.

*Conversation* is used in Scripture to signify *citizenship*, or *freemanship* ; it now commonly means *familiar discourse* or *intercourse*.

*Offence*, in Scripture, signifies a *stumbling-block* or *occasion of stumbling* ; it now signifies a *cause of displeasure*.

*To prevent*, in Scripture and in the English liturgy, means *to go before* or *anticipate* ; it now generally means *to obstruct* or *hinder*.

The signification of words is either *Primary* or *secondary*.

The *Primary* or *radical* sense of a word is that in which it is first used in language.

The *Secondary* or *figurative* sense is that which is afterwards superinduced on the primary.

A word can have only one primary, but it may have various secondary meanings.

Some words are used in their primary sense only.

Some words are used both in their primary and secondary senses.

Thus, *to transport*, signifies *to carry across from one place to another*, which is its primary meaning ; and also *to carry into banishment as a felon*, and *to carry away with pleasure*, which are secondary meanings.

Some words have lost their original and retain only their secondary significations.

Thus, *period*, which primarily signifies a *path round about*, *circuit*, is restricted to express a *definite portion of time*, *the end of a certain duration*, or *the point which marks the end of a complete sentence*.

The words which admit of the greatest latitude of variety of meaning are those which enter largely into composition, as the radical parts of derivative and compound words.

Thus, the radical parts of the following words, all which present *pater*, a father, have a difference of meaning in *Paternal*, belonging to a father.

*Patrimony*, an inheritance acquired from a father.

*Patriarch*, one who governs by paternal right.

*Patrician*, a nobleman (of the rank of *patres*, or senators).

*Patriot*, one who loves his native or father land.

*Patronymic*, a family-name.

*Patron*, one who takes another under his care.

*Parricide*, one who kills his father.

*Pater-noster*, the Lord's Prayer (so called, because it begins "*Pater noster*," that is, "*Our Father*.")

The radical meaning of a word, when discovered, always furnishes the key which explains and reconciles the remotest of its secondary significations.

Thus, *to let*, which signifies both *to allow* and *to hinder*, has its opposite meanings explained by a reference to root *let*, which signifies a *sluice* or *vent* for water, which course, either *allows* or *obstructs* the flowing of the water according as it is opened or shut.

In like manner, *heat* and *hate*, though apparently unconnected in present signification, are found to be reconciled when discovered to be both derivatives of the same Sanskrit root *haetan*, to stir or agitate, *hate* and *heat* alike involve the idea of violent excitement.

So also *reck*, *reckon*, and *right*, though greatly varying in their application, are all from a root signifying stretch

---

\* As, "He let me go;" that is, "he *allowed* me to go;" was let from coming unto you;" that is, "I was *hindered*,"

straining. *Reck*, that is, *care*, is a *stretching* of the mind towards an object; *reckon*, both in its sense of *think* and in its sense of *calculate*, is also a *stretching* of the mind; and *right* is *strait* or *stretched*, whether used in its primary sense, as in the expression "A *right* line," or in its metaphorical sense, as in the expression, "The Lord will do that which is *right*."\*

Many of the prepositions may also be cited as illustrations; their diverse and often opposite applications admitting of explanation from their primary meaning. Thus, *for* denotes both *in favour of* (as, "The gift is *for* a friend"), and *in opposition to* (as, "It rains; *for* all that, he will ride,"—that is, "in opposition to all that," or, "notwithstanding the rain, he will ride.") But the primary sense (from *faran*, to pass towards) of *passing* or *moving towards* a place, reconciles both significations. The *moving* or *going towards* a place or thing may either be in friendship or in hostility. Which of the two it is, in any one case, must be determined by the context,—all that the preposition expresses being simply the *going* or *moving towards*.

The changes of meaning which words undergo being ultimately dependent upon the laws that govern human thought in the use of arbitrary signs, the connexion between the original and every successive sense in which they are employed is necessarily fixed. But this connexion cannot be always reduced to fixed rules; nor is it even possible in all cases to trace the progress of their meanings, or to

---

\* These examples prove that words of the same generic meaning are often found in very different applications. But still more striking illustrations of this fact are furnished by the application of words of the same generic meaning in *different* languages. The same word, *leap*, is used both in English and in German; but in the former it signifies simply *to spring*; in the latter it signifies *to run*. *Anti* in Greek and *ante* in Latin not only represent the same idea, viz. *priority*, but they are the same words. Yet the former signifies *opposition*, and never priority in point of time merely; while the latter is employed to denote only priority in point of time.



show by what steps they have passed from their primitive to their present application.

The following are the transitions that most frequently occur :—

1. Words which primarily denote the qualities of sensible objects are extended to describe the analogous mental and moral qualities. Thus,

*Sour* signifies primarily *acid*; secondarily, *austere* or *peevish*.

*Acute* (from *acus*, a needle) signifies primarily *sharp*, opposed to blunt; secondarily, *ingenious*, opposed to stupid.

*Sanguine* (from *sanguis*, blood) signifies primarily *red*, like blood; secondarily, *ardent*.

2. Words are often transferred from one object to another which has some resemblance, real or supposed, to the former. Thus,

The Latin *granum*, a grain of corn (from whence the English *grain*), is the parent of *granite*, a stone spotted as if with grains.

*Lens*, a kind of *lentile* or *pulse*, is the parent of *lens*, a lentile-shaped piece of glass or other transparent substance used in optical science.

*Pyr*, the Greek word for *fire*, is perhaps the parent of *pyramid*, a building resembling in shape a flame of fire.

3. Words of a generic signification are often restricted in their application to a specific object or idea. Thus,

*Deist*, which primarily denotes one who has or admits a God, is the name for one who believes in a God but rejects Christianity.

*Prelate* signifies literally a person preferred or elevated; but it is limited to express an ecclesiastical dignitary, a bishop.

*Rector* literally means a *ruler* in general; but it is commonly restricted to mean either, as in England, a *clergyman* of a certain rank, or, as in Scotland, the head-master of a principal school.

. Words, on the other hand, which are specific in their primary application, often pass into general terms.

Of this description are all proper names which are used as common nouns, and adjectives derived from them. Thus,

*Jesuit*, which primarily means a member of the Society of Jesus, is applied generally to describe a *person of great subtlety and cunning*.

*Philippic*, the name of the orations in which Demosthenes inveighed against Philip of Macedon, is used to denote *invective* in general.

But words of this kind are not the only instances in which the tendency to generalize the signification of terms is to be found.

*Birch*, the twigs of which are employed in some English schools as the instrument of punishment, has come to mean an *instrument of correction* in general.

*Emolument*, which primarily means the *grist* of a mill, or toll taken for grinding, has been generalized to signify *profit or gain*, whatever be the source of it.

In many words the change from one meaning to another consists merely in a slight deflection or difference of application.

The following instances will illustrate the nature of the deviations by which words successively slide from one original port to a variety of figurative and remote applications:—

From the Latin *corpus, corporis*, the *body*, are derived

*Corpse*, a dead *body*.

*Corporeal*, of or belonging to the *body*.

*Corpulence*, bulkiness of *body*.

*Corps*, a *body* of soldiers.

*Corporal*, a subordinate military officer, commanding a small *body* of soldiers.

*Corporation*, a *body* municipal.

From the Latin *hospes, hospitis*, a *host* or *guest*, are derived  
*Hospitable*, kind to strangers.

*Hospital*, a refuge for the sick.

*Hotel* (formerly *hostel*), an inn.

*Hostler*, the keeper of the horses at an inn.

From the French *jour*, a *day*, are deduced

*Adjourn*, to put off till another *day*.

*Journal*, a diary, and also a paper or book published periodically.

*Journey*, travel by land, originally the travel of a *day*.

*Sojourn*, to reside for a time, originally for a *day*.

*Journeyman*, a workman for a limited time, originally by the *day*.

From the French *parler*, to *speak*, are deduced

*Parley*, an oral treaty.

*Parole*, word of promise.

*Parliament*, the great British council.

*Parlour*, a room (for conversation).

From the Saxon *pocca* (in Scotch and Old English *poke*), a *bag*, are deduced

*Pock* (in the plural *pox*), pustule or vesicle (of the shape of a *bag*).

*Pocket*, a *bag* inserted into clothes.

*Poach*, to steal game (from the practice of putting it in a *bag*).

From the Latin *pondus*, *ponderis*, a *weight*, are deduced

*Ponderous*, heavy.

*Ponder*, to *weigh* mentally.

*Pound*, a specific weight; also a sum of money, 20*s.* value, so called from the money being originally *weighed*.

*Pounder*, a gun that carries a bullet of so many *pounds*, as a *ten-pounder*.

*Poise*, to balance (a *weight*).

From the Latin *pono*, I *put* or *place*; *positus*, *put* or *placed*, are deduced

*Position*, situation.

*Posture*, attitude or *place* of the body.

*Positive*, certain (properly or certainly *placed* or *set* also dogmatical (ready to *place* or *lay down* notions with confidence).

*Post*, a beam set erect; also any fixed place or station.

*Post*, mode of conveying letters or of travelling by means of horses placed at different stages.

*Postage*, payment for conveyance of letters.

*Repository*, a place where things are deposited or kept.

*Supposititious*, not genuine; put by trick in the place or haracter belonging to another.

*Depose*, to put down from an office; to degrade, or divest of.

*Deponent*, one who lays down or gives evidence in a court of justice.

*Repose*, rest; literally placed or laid back (for rest).

*Expose*, to lay open; generally applied to the exposure of evil.

*Expound*, to interpret.

*Expositor*, one who expounds or interprets.

*Impose*, to lay on, to cheat.

*Imposition*, laying on, cheating.

*Impost*, a tax (laid on).

*Impostor*, one who cheats by assuming a fictitious character.

From the Latin *primus*, *first*, are deduced

*Prime*, early, *first-rate*.

To *Prime*, to put the *first* powder in the pan of a gun.

*Primer*, a *first* book for children.

*Premier*, the *first* minister of state.

*Primate*, the *first* or highest ecclesiastic.

*Primitive*, ancient.

*Prim* (from primitive), formal, precise.

*Primrose*, an *early* flower in spring.

From the Latin *senex*, *old*, are deduced

*Senior*, elder in age or in office.

*Signior*, a title of respect (given originally to age).

*Senate*, a council (because composed originally among the Romans of old men).

*Senator*, a public councillor.

*Sire*, father; also a title of address to kings.

6. Many words owe their secondary sense to purely accidental and often very singular associations.

The following are instances :—

*Atlas*, a collection of maps, is derived from *Atlas*, an African king, who, from his fondness for astronomy, is said to have supported the heavens on his back, and whose portrait in this attitude is often prefixed to books of maps.

*Cabal*, a close intrigue, is said to owe its origin to the initial letters of the names of five celebrated cabinet ministers of Charles II.,—Clifford, Ashley, Buckingham, Arlington, and Lauderdale. *Cabal*, the science of the Rabbins, is a word of Hebrew origin.

*Clergy*, the order of men set apart for the service of God, is from *cleros* (Gr.), a lot or inheritance, probably because the Hebrew priests had a special lot or portion assigned them among the other tribes.

*Clerk*, one who records transactions in writing, and formerly the usual name for a scholar, is from *clericus*, a clergyman, because the clergy were at one time the only persons who were fit for situations requiring learning.

*Dactyl*, a foot in verse, consisting of one long and two short syllables, is from *dactylos* (Gr.), a finger,—a finger consisting of a long and two short joints.

*Pagan*, a heathen, is from *pagus* (Lat.), a village ; because, after the establishment of Christianity in the Roman empire, the heathen being driven to villages and other parts remote from cities, were called *pagani*, that is, villagers.

*Pontiff*, priest (in Latin *pontifex*, that is, bridge-maker), is said to have been originally applied to the ministers of religion ; because at Rome they had the charge of repairing a particular bridge, which had also been built by them.

## PART III.

---

### SYNTAX.

SYNTAX treats of the construction and arrangement of words in sentences.

A sentence is a series of words so arranged as to form a complete proposition.

Thus, the words "A boy so diligent and moral as John," do not form a sentence, because they do not contain a simple proposition or statement. But "A boy so diligent and moral as John is sure to prosper," is a sentence.

Sentences are either *Simple* or *Complex*.

A *Simple* sentence expresses only a simple proposition, or contains but one verb either simple or compound; as,

"Age increases our desire of living."

"The vivacity of Mary's spirit and the warmth of her heart had betrayed her both into errors and into crimes."

A *Complex* sentence consists of two or more simple sentences, so combined as to make but one complete proposition; as,

"Age, though it lessens the enjoyment of life, increases our desire of living."

"The vivacity of Mary's spirit, which was not sufficiently tempered by sound judgment, and the warmth of her heart, which was not at all times under the restraint of discretion, had betrayed her both into errors and into crimes."

The clauses of a complex sentence are either *Principal* or *Parenthetical*.

The *Principal* clause is that which contains the leading proposition ; and it must express a complete idea, even when separated from the rest of the sentence.

A *Parenthetical*, or secondary clause, is a simple sentence, or part of a sentence, modifying the principal clause.

Thus, in the preceding sentences, and in those that follow, the clauses in italics are *parenthetical*.

"He will not be pardoned, *unless he repent.*"

"*While the bridegroom tarried,* they all slumbered and slept."

Parenthetical or secondary clauses may be conveniently subdivided into *Adjective, Relative, Participial, Connective, Interjective, Absolute, &c.*

An *Adjective* clause is a clause introduced by an adjective, and forming a complex adjective ; as,

"A boy, *attentive to his studies,* is sure to excel."

A *Relative* clause is a clause introduced by a relative pronoun ; as,

"A boy, *who is attentive to his studies,* is sure to excel."

A *Participial* clause is a clause introduced by a participle which describes some other word in the sentence ; as,

"A boy, *devoted to study,* is sure to excel."

A *Connective* clause is a clause introduced by a conjunction ; as,

"A boy is sure to excel, *if he be attentive to his studies.*"

An *Absolute* or *independent* clause is a clause which is not dependent upon any other word or words in the sentence ; as,

"*The doors being shut,* Jesus stood in the midst."

In every sentence there must be a *Subject*, or thing spoken of ; and a *Predicate*, or what is affirmed of it.

Every sentence, however short, must have both a *subject* and a *predicate*, and even the longest sentence is resolvable into the same two parts. For example, the following sentence, though it contains all the parts of speech except the interjection, is resolvable into a clause denoting the *subject* and a clause denoting the *predicate* :—"The man of piety and virtue ac-

cures for himself the high approbation both of God and of his fellow men." Here the *subject* of discourse is "*the man of piety and virtue*,"—a clause which, could it be expressed by a single word, would be a *noun*. In like manner, the *predicate*, or what is asserted of this man of piety and virtue, is, "*secures for himself the high approbation both of God and of his fellow men*,"—a clause which, could it also be expressed by a single word, would be a *verb*.

The *Subject* is always either a noun, or a word or form of words equivalent in effect to a noun.

The *Predicate* is always a verb, or a clause including a verb, and equal in amount to a verb.

The subject is known by putting the question, Who? or What? to the verb; as, *I read*. *Who* reads? Ans. *I*.

The subject may be expressed in any of the following ways:—

1. By a single noun; as,  
 "John writes."
2. By two or more nouns joined together, either by connecting words or by simple juxtaposition; as,  
 "John, James, and Robert, write."  
 "King, Lords, Commons, are all against it."
3. By a pronoun or pronouns; as,  
 "He runs;" "the boy *who* runs;" "*he* and *I* run."
4. By nouns joined with other words, to restrict their meaning; as,  
 "*Brave and vigilant soldiers* are sure of victory."  
 "*Men of sense* would not have done so;"  
 "*A man of gentle temper when once roused* is more to be feared than a passionate man."  
 "*The cities which once adorned the Euphrates and the Tigris* are in ruins."
5. By the infinitive; as,  
 "*To err* is human."
6. By sentences and clauses of sentences; as,  
 "*That you are disappointed* gives me pain."



" *Who steals my purse steals trash.*"

" *Whosoever expects to find unmixed happiness on earth looks for what he will not find.*"

In all these instances the words or clauses printed in italics are complex names of the subject spoken of in their respective sentences. They are therefore equivalent to nouns; and were there single words in the language capable of expressing them, these words would be nouns.

*The predicate* of a sentence must always contain at least one verb; but it may contain more than one, besides other parts of speech.

The following are instances of verbs and restrictive clauses used as predicates :—

" The people *mourn.*"

" The people *mourn and weep.*"

" The people *mourn and weep for their departed ruler.*"

" The people *mourn and weep for their departed ruler, with a poignancy of grief which proves how highly they appreciated his character and government.*"

When the verb of a sentence is transitive, it has joined with it a word or words describing the *object* of the verb; as,

" John strikes the *table.*"

" Joshua conducted the *Israelites* into the promised *land.*"

Here "table" and "Israelites" are the *objects* of the verbs "strikes" and "conducted."

The object is known by adding the interrogative *What?* or *Whom?* to the verb; as, *I read a book.* Read *what?*  
Ans. *A book.*

The object is often expressed by an infinitive, and also by a sentence or part of a sentence; as,

" He loves *to study.*"

" He should consider *how near he is to his end.*"

Here the objects of the verbs "loves" and "consider" are "to study," and "how near he is to his end."

## RULES OF SYNTAX.

The *Rules of Syntax* respect either the construction or the arrangement of words in sentences.

*Construction* respects the form which words assume in order to combine grammatically with other words in the same sentence.

*Arrangement* respects the order in which words stand in a sentence.

### I. RULES OF CONSTRUCTION.

#### SUBJECT AND VERB.

**RULE I.** The subject of a sentence, when a noun or pronoun, is always in the nominative case; and the verb is always of the same number and person with its subject.

1. When the subject, or nominative, denotes only one thing, the verb is put in the singular; as,

“ John *speaks* eloquently.”

“ He *is* mistaken.”

“ John or James *intends* to accompany me.”\*

“ Cæsar as well as Cicero *was* remarkable for his eloquence.”

“ Either he or she *is* wrong.”

“ To forgive *is* divine.”

“ That such a misfortune should befall your house and mar your prospects, *grieves* me exceedingly.”

2. When the subject, or nominative, denotes more than one, the verb is put in the plural; as,

“ The birds *carol*.”

“ They *are* mistaken.”

---

\* It is an error to say, as is commonly done, that when different subjects are disjoined by a conjunction they are always followed by a verb in the singular; for the predicate may be applied to the different subjects, and therefore may contain a plural verb. Thus, we usually say, “ Neither you nor I *are* in fault”—not “*is*” or “*am* in fault.” The Latin idiom is the same, “ Id neque ego, neque tu, fecimus.”

"Demosthenes and Cicero *were* great orators."

"Honour, justice, religion itself, *were* derided by these profligate wretches."

"He and she *go* in company."

"To be temperate in eating and drinking, to use exercise in the open air, and to preserve the mind free from tumultuous emotions, *are* the best preservatives of health."

3. Collective nouns are followed by a verb in the singular or plural, according as the idea of unity or plurality is meant to be expressed ; as,

"The army *is* on its march."

"The clergy *are* divided among themselves."

The person of the subject or nominative determines the person of the verb ; as,

"I *am* at my post."

"Thou *shalt* not steal."

"John *reads* his lesson."

Nouns are always of the third person, except when they are employed to name the person addressed ; in which case they are of the second person ; as,

"Our Father who *art* in heaven."

Relative pronouns are of the same person with their correlatives ; as,

"I who *am* now present."

"Thou, Lord, who *knowest* the heart."

"The Lord who *seeth* us."

Infinitives, and parts of sentences which are employed as nominatives to verbs, are always reckoned of the third person ; as,

"To be afraid to do evil *is* true courage."

"For sinners to be proud *is* the height of inconsistency."

### OBJECT.

RULE II. The *object* of a transitive verb, when expressed by a noun or pronoun, is put in the *objective* case ; as,

"If ye love *me*, keep my commandments."

"This is the man *whom* the king delighteth to honour."

NOUNS AND PRONOUNS.

**RULE III.** When two nouns or a noun and pronoun are used to denote the possessor and the thing possessed, the name of the possessor is put in the *possessive case* ; as,

" In my *Father's* house."

" On *eagles'* wings."

" *Thine* is the kingdom."

" The child *whose* father is dead."

1. When the name of the possessor is a complex noun, or a noun made up of two or more words, the last-mentioned word only receives the sign of the possessive case ; as,

" *Julius Cæsar's* Commentaries."

" *John the Baptist's* head."

" *Oliver and Boyd's* printing-office."

2. The name of the thing possessed, when it is obvious, is often omitted ; as,

" He went to see *St Peter's* at Rome," that is, *St Peter's Church*.

" I am going to the *magistrate's*," that is, the *magistrate's house*.

**RULE IV.** Nouns or personal pronouns, when added to other nouns or pronouns to explain them, are put in the same case with them ; as,

" *Paul the Apostle* wrote to the Romans."

" The leader was taken, *he* who defied the law."

" Brutus killed *Cæsar*, *him* who had been his friend."

**RULE V.** Pronouns agree with their correlatives in gender, number, and person ; as,

" The queen put on *her* royal apparel."

" The river is swollen ; *it* overflows *its* banks."

" The trees have lost *their* foliage."

" *Thou* who art mighty."

"The boy *who* writes the letter."

"The letter *which*\* is written."

1. When the correlative of the pronoun is a clause or part of a sentence, the pronoun is put in the neuter gender, singular number, and third person ; as,

"It grieves me to hear of your illness."

"She was over indulgent to her children, *which* is a sin."

2. When a pronoun relates to two nouns or pronouns in different persons collectively, it takes the first person plural in preference to the second, and the second in preference to the third ; as,

"He and I shared it between *us*."

"You and John are welcome ; I rejoice to see *you* both."

"You and he and I have *our* difficulties."

"You and he have *your* doubts."

**RULE VI.** The pronoun *it*, when the nominative to a verb, is often used indefinitely, and is applied to persons as well as to things ; to the first person and second as well as to the third ; and to a plural as well as to a singular ;† as,

"It is the king."

"It is I, be not afraid."

"It was you who did it."

"It is these fetters that vex me."

\* Formerly *which* was used in the masculine and feminine as well as in the neuter gender, and consequently joined with persons as well as things. Such expressions as "mighty men *which* were of old," are common in the authorized version of the Scriptures ; indeed, there are not more than two or three instances in the English Bible of *who* applied to persons.

† The French has an idiom very similar to this. Thus, "*Il est des animaux qui semblent réduits au toucher ; il en est qui semblent participer à notre intelligence.*" This and similar usages of the pronoun *il* is well explained by its etymology. According to Tooke, *IT* is the perfect participle of *haelan*, to say, and consequently means *said*. Being indefinite in its meaning, it is obviously applicable to words of all genders, of both numbers, and of all persons. If it be objected that, in such constructions as the above, it cannot well signify *the said*, as it *goes before*, and does not *follow*.

ADJECTIVES.

**RULE VII.** The comparative of adjectives is followed by *than* when opposition is signified, and by *of* when selection is implied ; as,

“ Wisdom is better *than* wealth.”

“ Africanus was the greater *of* the two Scipios.”

**RULE VIII.** The numerals *this* and *that* agree in number with the nouns which they describe ; as,

“ *This* book,” “ *that* map ;” “ *these* books,” “ *those* maps.”

This rule is violated in such expressions as, “ these kind of people,” “ those sort of things.”

**RULE IX.** The other numerals admit a noun in the singular or plural according as they signify one or more ; as, “ *one* horse,” “ *two* horses.”

To this rule there are several exceptions.

1. *A*, when combined with the numerals *many* and *few*, admits a noun in the plural ; as, “ a few *persons*,” “ a great many *men*.”

*A* is used before words beginning with a consonant, the long sound of *u*, and vowels sounding like *w*. *An* is used before words beginning with a vowel or a silent *h* ; as,

the thing alluded to, the answer is, that a pronoun has often an *anticipative* reference. The following phraseology is common in English. “ In *his* Essay, Mr Locke observes,” &c. ; where the pronoun *his* precedes the noun *Mr Locke*, to which it refers. The same thing happens with *it* in such a sentence as the following : — “ It will be seen that I have availed myself of your hints ;” the analysis of the expression is, *IT* (*the about to be said*) will be seen, viz. that I have availed, &c. In the familiar phrases, “ *it* rains,” “ *it* snows,” &c., there is probably a *tacit* allusion to the state of the atmosphere or the weather, which permits us to say, “ *the said* rains,” “ *the said* snows.” For a larger illustration of the use of *it*, see LYON'S *Analysis of the English Parts of Speech*, Appendix, G.

The reason of this seeming anomaly probably is, that *few* and *many* are used in such cases after the manner of collective nouns.

"*A* boy;" "*a* unicorn;" "*many a* one."

"*An* acorn;" "*an* hour."

When two or more nouns or adjectives, descriptive of the same thing, are joined together, the article is prefixed only to the first of them; if the nouns describe different things, the article is prefixed to each separately; as,

"I bought a black and white cow, which cost twelve pounds."

"I bought *a* black and *a* white cow, which cost *each* twelve pounds."

2. *Every*, though generally construed with a singular noun, is joined to a plural noun when the things it denotes are conceived as forming an aggregate; as, "*every* twelve years;" that is, every period of twelve years.

3. *All* is joined with a singular noun when it refers to quantity, and with a plural noun when it refers to number; as,

"Six days shalt thou labour and do *all* thy work."

"*All* men are mortal."

4. *Many*, though significant of plurality, is sometimes construed with a noun in the singular; as,

"*Many a* flower is born to blush unseen."

*More*, when the comparative of *much*, and denoting a greater quantity, is joined with a noun in the singular; but when the comparative of *many*, and denoting a greater number, it is joined with a noun in the plural; as, "*more* fruit;" "*more* men."

## VERBS.

**RULE X.** Some transitive verbs, as *give*, *tell*, *send*, *promise*, *allow*, admit two objective cases after them, the one denoting the object, and the other the person; as,

"He gave *it* *me*."\*

"He sent *it* *us*."\*

"He allowed *me* great liberty."\*

"He promised *us* many benefits."\*

---

\* It is not improbable that all these expressions are elliptical: the preposition *to* being understood before the personal pronouns.

The same verbs, especially in colloquial discourse, admit in objective case after the passive voice ; as,

“ I was allowed great *liberty*.”

“ She was *offered them* by her mother.”

“ He was forbid the *presence* of the king.”

RULE XI. The verb *to be* has the same case after it as before it ; as,

“ *It is I*, be not afraid.”

“ *It is he*.”

“ You believed it to be *him*.”

“ *Whom* do they represent *me* to be.”

RULE XII. The *infinitive* of a verb is always preceded by the sign *to*, except when it follows the verbs *bid, dare, feel, hear, let, need, make, see*, or the generic verbs *may, can, shall, will, and must* ; as,

“ He ordered *me to hasten*.”

“ He bade *me go*.”

“ I saw him *strike* the boy.”

*Dare*, when it signifies to challenge or defy, is also construed with *to* ; as,

“ I dare thee but *to breathe* upon my love.”

In the English version of the Bible, the verb *to make* is similarly construed ; as,

“ He maketh his sun *to rise*.”

RULE XIII. Participles, when they retain the sense of the verb, are construed as the verbs to which they belong ; but when they are employed as nouns they are followed by *of* ; as,

“ He is well situated for *gaining wisdom*.”

“ He is well situated for *the gaining of wisdom*.”

RULE XIV. Participles, when used as nouns or as parts of complex nouns, are frequently preceded by a noun or pronoun in the possessive case ; as,

“ I am averse to the nation's *involving itself in war*.”



**RULE XV.** When a noun or pronoun is joined with a participle, without being dependent on any other word in the sentence, it is put in the nominative case ; as,

“ We being exceedingly tossed, they lightened the ship.”

This construction is commonly called *the nominative absolute*.

The imperfect participle, without being connected with a noun or pronoun, often introduces an absolute clause, as an adjunct to a sentence ; as,

“ Generally *speaking*, the people are industrious.”

“ It is not possible to act otherwise, *considering* the weakness of our nature.”

The infinitive is also sometimes used in an absolute or independent sense ; as,

“ *To speak* the truth, we are all liable to error.”

### PREPOSITIONS.

**RULE XVI.** The *object* of a preposition, when expressed by a noun or pronoun, is put in the *objective* case ; as,

“ He came behind *me*.”

“ The man with *whom* you are acquainted.”

The preposition *to* is often omitted, especially after the adverbs *nigh*, *near*, &c., and before the personal pronouns ; as,

“ He came near *the city*,”—that is, “ *near to the city*.”

“ He sent *me* the book,”—that is, “ *to me*.”

### CONJUNCTIONS.

**RULE XVII.** Conjunctions connect nouns and pronouns in the same case ; as,

“ *You* and *I* are schoolfellows.”

“ The master struck *him* and not *me*.”

“ *You* may do it as easily as *I*.”

“ He will as soon punish *you* as *me*.”

“ *You* are older than *I*.”

“ I love *you* better than *him*.”

“ Better it should be *yours* than *mine*.”

*Than* was formerly used as a preposition, and took an objective case after it. When joined with a relative pronoun, it still retains its character of preposition; as,

“Alfred *than* whom a better king never reigned.”

**RULE XVIII.** Some conjunctions are employed as correlatives to each other; thus,

*Both* is followed by *and*; as, “*Both* you *and* I did it.”

*Either* by *or*; as, “I will *either* come *or* send.”

*Neither* by *nor*; as, “*Neither* John *nor* James is fit for it.”

*Though*, or *although*, by *yet*; as, “*Though* he slay me, *yet* will I trust in him.”

*Whether* by *or*; as, “*Whether* he go *or* stay.”

In like manner, the conjunction *that* follows the adverb *so*, and the adjective *such*, when it denotes “*so great*,” as,

“You have *so* incensed him *that* he will punish you.”

“Their arrogance was *such*, *that* even good men turned away in disgust.”

The adverbs *not only* and *not merely* are often followed by the conjunction *but* in connexion with *also* or *likewise*; as,

“He was *not only* harmless, *but* he was *also* wise.”

**RULE XIX.** The generic verbs signifying contingency are often omitted before specific verbs, preceded by the conjunctions *if*, *though*, *unless*, &c.; as,

“*Though* he slay me,”—that is, though he should slay me.

“*If* thou be afflicted, repine not,”—that is, if thou shouldst be afflicted.\*

---

\* In such phraseologies as, “he slay,” “thou be,” &c., some grammarians see what they call a subjunctive mood of the verb,—that is, a form of the verb peculiar to clauses which are subjoined to others by means of the conjunctions *if*, *though*, &c. But it is plain that these conjunctions exercise no influence over the verb. The reason of the peculiar form is, that the idea of contingency is present to the mind of the speaker or writer, and is meant to be expressed—(the same reason, indeed, that gives rise to the use of the conjunctions themselves in these cases). Accordingly, the form of the verb is the same when contingency is expressed, whether the conjunctions be used or not. “*Be* you present, or *be* you absent,

## INTERJECTIONS.

**RULE XX.** Interjections are joined with the objective case of the pronoun of the first person, and with the nominative of the pronoun of the second; as, "Ah me!" "O ye hypocrites!"

## EXERCISES ON CONSTRUCTION.

*Distinguish between complete and imperfect sentences.*

He who does no good. He who does no good will certainly do evil. A city built of brick. The city is built of brick. When the poor complain. When the poor complain with reason. When the poor complain, the rich should listen to their cry. When the poor complain with reason, the rich should give heed to their voice. His talents excited admiration. His talents, which were of a high order, excited admiration. Generosity would lose half her dignity. Generosity would lose half her dignity, if malice did not contribute to her elevation. The ship being cast away. The ship was lost. Expecting to receive your reply.

*Distinguish simple from complex sentences; and, in the latter, principal from secondary clauses.*

If a parent is a literary man, his very girls will talk learnedly. Man is a creature of extremes. Though the middle path is generally the sure path, there are few wise enough to find it. Thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart and with all thy strength, and thy neighbour as thyself. The history of his own country ought to be studied by every citizen. When I look at the mind of Lord Bacon, it seems vast, original, penetrating beyond all competition; but when I look at his character, and see a man shuffling, wavering, mean, I am constrained to say, "Cease from man."

*Give their appropriate names to the secondary clauses, both in the preceding examples and in the following.*

He that has never been injured, has never had it in his

---

I will speak," is as grammatical as "Whether you be present or absent." Besides, it is to be observed, that when certainty and not contingency is expressed, the verb does not take this elliptical form though preceded by *if*, *though*, &c.

power to exercise the noblest privilege of heroic virtue. A man destitute of a sense of duty can never be a man of honour. Thousands, whom indolence has sunk into contemptible obscurity, might have attained the highest distinctions, if idleness had not frustrated the effect of all their powers. True charity is not a meteor which occasionally glares, but a luminary which dispenses a steady and benign influence. We cannot be guilty of a greater act of uncharitableness than to interpret the afflictions which befall our neighbours as punishments and judgments. Such is the emptiness of human enjoyment, that we are always impatient of the present. Our prospects being all blighted, what remains but that we should depart.

Beneath these rugged elms, that yew-tree's shade,  
Where heaves the turf in many a mouldering heap,  
Each, in his narrow cell for ever laid,  
The rude forefathers of the hamlet sleep.

But, if for me thou dost forsake  
Some other maid, and rudely break  
Her worshipp'd image from its base,  
To give to me the ruin'd place ;—  
Then fare thee well . . . I'd rather make  
My bower upon some icy lake,  
When thawing suns begin to shine,  
Than trust to love so false as thine.

To confess the truth, there are few who are fully qualified for the high office of governing their fellows.

*Distinguish the subject and predicate in the following sentences ; also the object where it occurs :—*

The city of the Cæsars stands on seven hills. That you are disappointed gives me pain. Men of wealth are useful to a country. Men of wealth who employ their riches for the promotion of good objects, deserve the applause of their countrymen. Men of wealth who employ their riches for the promotion of good objects, without looking for any reward from man, merit and shall receive the approbation of a higher than man. The opinions, the spirit, the conversation, the manners of the parent, influence the child. Cæsar came, saw, and conquered. He and I are class-fellows. No man is kind enough,

gentle enough, forbearing and forgiving enough. The hero, whom the world deems deserving of the name, is the man who makes a bustle, who makes the road smoke under his chariot and four, who manages or devastates empires. A strong sense of duty, without any direct reference to consequences, ought to be our prevailing principle of action. The recollection of parental instructions cleaves to a man, harasses him, and throws itself continually in his way.

Who will another tree may sing,  
Old England's oak for me.

*Sentences to be corrected.* (See Rule I.)

Many men is deceived by false appearances. The state of our affairs are very prosperous. There is, in fact, no servants in the house. Temperance and moderate exercise preserves health. Is your father and mother at home? Either danger or fear have brought you here. Cæsar as well as Cicero were distinguished for eloquence. The navy form our natural bulwark, and have often proved our defence in time of peril. The youth is not so well educated in this country now as formerly. Either John or his brother go to town to-day. What avails the highest professions, if the life is not in accordance with them. A variety of circumstances are to be taken into account. My brother and him are tolerable scholars.

————— O thou my lips inspire,  
Who touch'd Isaiah's hallowed lips with fire.

These are the men who makes long speeches. The terms are as moderate as is consistent with any profit. Has the goods been sold to advantage? Scotland and thee did in each other live. To honour your parents, to reverence your teachers, and to be obliging to your schoolfellows, is the sure way to preferment. Sorrows, like a flood, overwhelms me. The possession of our senses entire, of our limbs uninjured, of a sound understanding, of friends and companions, though often overlooked among the many blessings which we enjoy, deserve our liveliest gratitude.

*Sentences to be filled up with verbs.* (See Rule I.)

There two essential words in language. The first the noun, or word by which a thing named; the second

the verb, which                      the state or action of a thing. Fifty  
 pounds of wheat                      forty pounds of flour. The mechanism  
 of clocks and watches                      unknown to the ancients. In him,  
    happily blended true dignity with softness of manners.  
 To live soberly, righteously, and godly,                      required of all men.  
 Religion, vital religion, the religion of the heart,                      the true  
 source of virtue. Without a holy life, what                      mere pro-  
 fessions of excellence. Neither of them                      able to do other-  
 wise.                      either of them then to blame? His wisdom and  
 not his riches                      admiration. His having so often offended  
    the reason why he                      so severely punished. The mother,  
 with her family,                      left the neighbourhood. Their religion  
 as well as their manners                      ridiculed. Town or country  
 equally agreeable to me. Do thou, Lord, who                      above all,  
 come to our aid. Will the Lord, who                      above all, come to  
 our aid? That your conduct                      so inconsistent                      most dis-  
 tressing. I am the general officer who                      the orders to-  
 day. I who                      the orders to-day am a general officer.

*Sentences to be corrected.* (See Rule II.)

Such folly will ruin ye both. Who have I reason to love,  
 if not my father? He and they we know; but whom are you?  
 They, who worth and rank has exalted, deserves our respect.  
 He sent they who he thought to belong to his party. He in-  
 vited my cousin and I to spend the holidays at his house.  
 They that I rebuke before all. You should punish the guilty  
 person, not I who is innocent. Whatever others do, let you  
 and I perform our part.

*Sentences to be corrected.* (See Rules II.—VII.)

The Duke's of Roxburgh forest. The king's of Great Bri-  
 tain's prerogative. Thy fathers virtue is not thine. It was  
 the men, women, and children's lot to suffer much affliction.  
 Moses rod was turned into a serpent. I called at the book-  
 seller. I had the surgeon, the physician, and the apothecary's  
 assistance. The king and queen put on his robes. Can any  
 one be sure that their own trials will not overcome them. Be-  
 hold the Moon! how brightly she shines; yet the light is not  
 its own. He had a companion which corrupted him. The  
 Despot was like a beast of prey, who destroys without pity.

Spare thou them, O God, which confess their sins. There is not a state of Europe who does not keep a body of troops in their pay. John and you have taken it to themselves. My father and I enjoy their meal together. You have taken our portion from James and me; send it them immediately. Search the Scriptures, for in them ye say that ye have eternal life; yet *they are* they that testify of me. *They were* the heretics that first began to rail. It were they that were the real offenders.

*Sentences to be filled up with pronouns.* (See Rules II.—VII.)

You were told. was he; but the truth is, was I. Who is that calls out my name at this rate: I will punish, be who he may. Females, duty it is not to mingle in public life, have own part assigned. I do not think any one should incur censure for being tender of reputation. My brother and I love occupation. A friend has sent John and you the present in token of his love to. He had an acquaintance poisoned his principles. The horse and his rider came yesterday have departed to-day. They take the sun out of the world take friendship out of it. She took goodly raiment, was in the house, and put upon Jacob. He is a Nero, is another name for cruelty.

*Sentences to be corrected.* (See Rules VII. VIII. IX.)

This noble nation has, of all others, admitted fewer corruptions. I have not been from home this twenty years. These sort of person disregard public opinion. Instead of improving yourself, you have been trifling this two hours. How beautiful an house! it is a hospital for orphans. He pronounced an eulogium upon the departed king. The king of Israel and the king of Judah sit each upon their throne. Let each esteem others better than himself. Every one of his letters bear this date. Every man's daily walk and conversation displays his character. Neither of these persons seem to think it possible for them to err. There are many a house in the manufacturing district that are suffering. Each in their turn receives the benefits to which they are entitled. These are the kind of enjoyments that good men aspire after.

*Sentences to be corrected.* (See Rules X.—XVI.)

He is really the person who he appears to be. It may be him, but it cannot be me. I understood it to be he. It might have been her; but there is no proof of it. I know not who has done this kindness to me, unless it be him who has so often assisted me before. It is better live on little than outlive a great deal. I need not to solicit him to do a kind action. This was betraying of the trust reposed in him. I cannot help regarding him as an enemy, and thou as a deceitful friend. He prepared them for the event by the sending to them early intelligence. The changing times and seasons, the removing and setting up kings, belong to Providence alone. By reading of good books, we are sure to improve both our mind and our morals. Him who was the most powerful having been defeated, the conquest of the rest was easy.

The bleating sheep with my complaints agree,  
Them parched with heat, and me inflamed by thee.

*Sentences to be corrected.* (See Rule XVI.)

It is for I that the gift is intended. It is not you who I am displeased with. Do you know who you speak to? What fellowship ought there to be between ye who are holy and they who are wicked? From he that is needy turn not away. Who didst thou obtain such strange information from?

*Sentences to be corrected.* (See Rules XVII. XVIII. XIX.)

A great intimacy subsists between him and I. You and me have enjoyed many a pleasant excursion together. Neither he nor her can answer. It is neither high or low. I must be so plain to tell you, that you have misapprehended it altogether. He was as distinguished in his profession as he imagined. He would not speak himself, nor let any other speak. So ill-informed is the boy as that he is qualified for nothing. I gained a son, and such a son as all men hailed me happy. There was something so touching in the manner he told the tale of his misfortunes, as affected me more than I can express. If he does but touch the mountains, they will smoke. Though Christ were a son, yet learned he obedience. Though he robs me of my all, I shall not be able to hate him. If a man smites



his servant and he dies, he shall surely be put to death. Though God be high, yet he hath respect to the lowly.

#### MISCELLANEOUS EXERCISES ON CONSTRUCTION

*Correct the errors in the following sentences :—*

Self-denial and devotedness to God is the soul of religion. Neither of them are to be dispensed with. There was no sooner told, but it was universally believed. All power of ridicule, aid by the desertion of friends and the loss of his estate, were not able to conquer his spirit. Be ready to assist such deserving persons who appear to be destitute of friends. Every friend who we confide in change but it is not the uttering or the hearing certain words that constitute prayer to God. The climate of England is not so pleasant as those of France, Spain, or Italy.

The concourse of people were so great as that with great difficulty we passed through them. He has already made progress in his studies; and, if his diligence continues, will soon fulfil the expectations of his friends. It is against his propensity to this vice, against every principle of industry and honour. Whether virtue advances our worldly interests or no, we must follow her dictates. I have seldom seen so beautiful a flower. I have seldom seen so beautiful a flower doubt not but that he will fulfil his promise. On your future conduct depend your future happiness or misery. Was he present when the detail of his toils and sufferings were before the meeting? Do thou, Lord, who hath permitted the accumulation of trials to overtake us, interpose to deliver us from them! Lycurgus, the Spartan lawgiver, he forbade coining any metal more precious than iron. By the precepts and attainments are the preceptor honoured, and the pupils themselves encouraged. Not one in a hundred of those who profess the gospel of Christ, know what it is they scoff at. Who pursues the lofty tenor of her way whatever be the difficulties that encompass it; and sooner or later it will have its reward. The more I see of his character, I like him better. It is not only the interest but duty of youth to reverence their parents. The captain had several men died in his ship. The Chinese language contains an immense number of words which, therefore, would learn them must possess a power

verbal memory. The sacrifices that virtue makes will not only be rewarded hereafter, but recompensed even here. There is nothing men are more ignorant of, or which they less understand, than their own characters. This is one of the Divine precepts which is entitled to special reverence.

Death's sable shades at once o'ercast their eyes,  
In dust the vanquish'd and the victor lies.

Though the manner of Thucydides be dry and harsh, yet, on great occasions, he displays vast powers of description.

*Supply the blanks in the following paragraphs:—*

I yesterday passed the whole afternoon in the churchyard, amusing with the tombstones and inscriptions I met with. Most of them recorded nothing else of the buried person, that he born upon one day, and upon another; the whole history of his life comprehended in those two circumstances, that common to mankind. I could not but look upon these registers of existence, brass or marble, as a kind of satire upon the departed persons, had left no other memorial, that they born and they died.

When I look upon the tombs of great, every emotion of envy dies in ; when I read the epitaphs of the beautiful, every inordinate desire out; when meet with the grief of parents upon a tombstone, heart with compassion; when I see the tomb of the parents , I consider the vanity of grieving for those we must quickly follow: when I see kings lying by those deposed them, I consider rival wits placed side by side, or the holy men that divided the world with contests and disputes, reflect, with sorrow and astonishment, on the little competitions, factions, and debates of mankind. When I read the several dates of the tombs,—of some died yesterday, and some six hundred years ago,—I consider great day when we all of be contemporaries, and our appearance together.

Whatever the dispositions, the faculties of the child, whether earlier later in life, the business of father nor masters can proceed wisely well, without the

co-operation of the mother. Who knows so well as the road to the understanding, the road the heart? Who has skill like , to encourage the timid and repress the ? has power and address like a mother's subdue the stubborn and confirm the irresolute? Who with such exquisite art draw out, put in motion, and direct ordinary or superior powers; place goodness in fairest and attractive light, and expose in its most hideous forbidding form? In the case of those persons have unhappily deviated from the path of virtue, how many been stopped, converted, brought back, by consideration of maternal feelings, and the recollection of early lessons, and principles, and resolutions! Having been trained up, when a child, in the way wherein should walk, the man calls to remembrance in old age, returns to , and from no more.

Hyenas generally inhabit caverns and other rocky places, whence they issue under cover of the night to prowl for food. They gregarious, not so much from any social principle, from a greediness of disposition, and a gluttonous instinct, which many to assemble even over a scanty and insufficient prey. They are said devour the bodies they find in cemeteries, and to disinter as hastily or imperfectly inhumed. seems, indeed, to be a peculiar gloominess and malignity of disposition in the aspect of the hyena, and manners in a state of captivity are savage and untractable. Like every other animal, however, is perfectly capable of being tamed.

## II. RULES OF ARRANGEMENT.

The words of a sentence may be arranged either in *Conventional* or *Rhetorical* order.

The *Conventional* order is that arrangement of words which is most usual in the language.

The *Rhetorical* order is that arrangement which results from the peculiar frame of mind in which the sentiment is spoken or written.

The conventional order seems chiefly accommodated to sim-

ple explanation, narrative, and deduction; the rhetorical to what admits the exertion of fancy or of passion.

The rhetorical order is in every language more or less cramped by the laws of conventional arrangement. But it is most fettered in languages which, like the English, admit of few inflections.

The chief object of the rhetorical order seems to be, to place the emphatical word or words in that position in the sentence, which will give them the greatest advantage for fixing the attention of the hearer or reader.\*

The chief laws of arrangement, both conventional and rhetorical, are the following:—

### SUBJECT AND VERB.

**RULE I.** In sentences *conventionally* arranged, the subject or nominative precedes the verb in all cases except four; as,

“ The clouds gather.”

“ To obey is better than sacrifice.”

The cases in which the nominative follows the verb are the following:—

1. When the sentence is interrogative; as,

“ Do | riches make men happy ?”

“ Stands | Scotland where it did ?”

2. When the sentence is imperative; as,

“ Go | thou.” “ Read | ye.”

3. When a supposition is elliptically expressed; as,

“ Had | I known it.” “ Were | it true.”

---

\* Of the two kinds of arrangement above described, the conventional or grammatical, and the rhetorical, the latter seems to be the more natural. Whatever most strongly fixes the attention, or operates on the passions of the speaker, will first seek utterance by the lips; and accordingly the *emphatical*, in opposition to the grammatical order, is that which is invariably followed in animated conversation. But what seems to determine the point, is the fact that, while the conventional order is different in different languages, the rhetorical mode of arrangement is the same in all languages.—*Vide CAMPBELL'S Philosophy of Rhetoric*, b. iii. c. 3.

4. When the verb is preceded by *there, here, hence, then, thus, yet, so, nor, neither, such, herein, therein, wherein, &c.* ; as,

“ There\* was | a man sent from God.”

“ Here are | five loaves.”

“ Hence arise | strifes and dissensions.”

A few phrases, such as *said he, replied they*, which are deviations from the general rule, scarcely deserve notice.

**RULE II.** In sentences *rhetorically* arranged, the predicate is often, for the sake of emphasis and vivacity, made to precede the subject.

“ Shines forth | the cheerful sun !”

“ Great is | Diana of the Ephesians !”

“ Blessed is | he that cometh in the name of the Lord !”

“ Fallen, fallen, is | Babylon that great city !”

In such instances, the conventional arrangement would greatly weaken the vivacity of the statement. Thus, “ Diana of the Ephesians is great,” would be a frigid and spiritless exclamation, compared with the above transposition of the words.

In sentences rhetorically arranged, the subject, when peculiarly important, is sometimes made to stand at the beginning of the sentence without its intended verb—the predicate taking the form of an exclamation with a pronoun for its nominative ; as,

“ The rainbow—how beautiful it is !”

### VERB AND ITS OBJECT.

**RULE III.** In sentences *conventionally* arranged, a transitive verb precedes its object, except when the object is either expressed by a relative pronoun or preceded by a relative pronoun as its adjective ; as,

“ God created | the heavens and the earth.”

---

\* A sentence is generally introduced by *there*, followed by a verb, when the speaker or writer wishes to call particular attention to the sentiment expressed.

"If ye love | me, keep | my commandments."

"No account has yet reached | us of the men whom |  
you despatched."

"Whatsoever blessing | he bestows."

**RULE IV.** In *rhetorical* sentences the object, when the emphatic word, precedes its verb ; as,

"Silver and gold | have I none, but such as I have |  
give I to thee."

"Whom | ye ignorantly worship, him | declare I unto  
you."

In verse, considerable latitude of transposition is allowed in this, as in most other respects, even where emphasis does not require it ; as,

"She with extended arms his aid | implores."

"No portents now our foes | amaze."

"Our harps | by Babel's streams we left."

#### POSITION OF ADJECTIVES.

**RULE V.** The Adjective is generally placed immediately before the noun which it qualifies ; as,

"A beautiful | tree." "A mighty | river."

There are four cases in which this order is inverted.

1. When the adjective is used as a title, it is placed after its noun ; as,

"Alexander | the Great."

"Lorenzo | the Magnificent."

2. When there are more adjectives than one joined with the same noun, they are generally placed after it ; as,

"A man, | wise, valiant, and good."

3. When the adjective is itself qualified by some other word or words with which it forms a complex adjective, it is placed after the noun ; as,

"A scholar, | *respectful to his teacher*."

Here the adjective which qualifies the noun "scholar" is not "respectful" alone, but the complex adjective "respectful to his teacher."

4. An adjective denoting extent is put after the clause which expresses the measure of extent ; \* as,

“ A wall | ten feet high.”

“ An army | fifty thousand strong.”

The adjective is separated from its noun when it qualifies the action of the verb, and so forms along with the verb the predicate of the noun ; as,

“ He drinks deep.”

“ It looks strange.”

RULE VI. In *rhetorical* sentences, the adjective, when emphatic, begins the sentence, and is often separated from its noun by a considerable distance ; as,

“ Great | is the Lord.”

“ Auspicious to our country | will be the change.”

The articles *a* and *the*, though generally prefixed to adjectives, are in certain cases subjoined to them.

*A* or *an* is always put after the adjective *such* ; it is also put after all adjectives when they are preceded by the words, *as, so, too, how* ; as,

“ Such | a king as ours.”

“ As great | a man as he was.”

“ So vast | a multitude.”

*The* is put after the adjective *all* only ; as,

“ All | the city assembled.”

When *this* and *that* describe a succession of objects, *this* is applied to the latter or nearer, and *that* to the former or more remote ; as,

“ Bashfulness and impudence ought both to be avoided : *this* rendering us objects of disgust, *that* of pity.”

---

\* Perhaps this rule ought to be considered as only a specific application of that immediately preceding ; but as it describes the position of the measure of extent as well as that of the adjective, it deserves to be separately mentioned.

POSITION OF PRONOUNS.

**RULE VII.** When the personal pronouns come together, the pronoun of the second person is placed before that of the third ; and the pronoun of the first person is placed after those of the second and third ; as,

“ If *you* and *Tullia* are well, *Cicero* and *I* are well.”\*

**RULE VIII.** The *relative* pronouns, with their clauses, are, to prevent ambiguity, placed as close as possible to their correlatives.

Thus, in the following sentence, in which the justness of the master's character, not the servant's, is meant to be expressed, the order should be, not “ The master dismissed his servant, *whom none believed to be capable of an unjust act*,” but “ The master, *whom none believed to be capable of an unjust act*, dismissed his servant.”

POSITION OF THE INFINITIVE.

**RULE IX.** In *conventional* sentences, the infinitive is placed after the verb on which it depends, though often separated from it by other words ; as,

“ He was commanded | to release the prisoners.”

“ He was commanded | by the king | to release the prisoners.”

**RULE X.** In *rhetorical* sentences, the infinitive without its sign is sometimes, for the sake of emphasis, made to occupy the first place in the sentence ; as,

“ Go | I must whatever may ensue.”

“ Avoid | it he could not by any means.”

POSITION OF ADVERBS.

**RULE XI.** Adverbs are usually placed close to the words whose signification they are intended to qua-

---

\* In Latin, the opposite arrangement of the pronoun of the first person is adopted. In that language, the instance here given is, “ Si tu et Tullia valetis, ego et Cicero valeamus.”



lity ; but whether they should precede or follow them seems to be regulated by the sound, except in the case of adjectives, which they generally precede.

Thus, we say “ truly | wise,” “ eminently | pious ;” but we say either “ he was graciously | received ;” or “ he was received | graciously.”

*Enough* is always placed after its adjective ; as, “ The house is large | enough.”

*Never* commonly precedes a single verb, except *be*, which it follows ; as,

“ He never sings.”

“ We are never absent.”

*Not only, not merely*, and other adverbs which affect whole clauses, are placed so as clearly to indicate the clauses which they qualify ; thus,

“ He was received not only | *with courtesy*, but with kindness.”

“ He was not only | *received with courtesy*, but treated with kindness.”

The following collocation would be incorrect :—

“ He was not only received with courtesy, but with kindness.”

“ He was received not only with courtesy, but treated with kindness.”

**RULE XII.** Adverbs, when emphatical, may introduce a sentence and be separated from the words which they are intended to qualify ; as,

“ How completely | his passion has blinded him !”

“ Up | goes the ponderous drawbridge.”

This position of adverbs is most frequently found in exclamatory and interrogative sentences.

#### POSITION OF PREPOSITIONS.

**RULE XIII.** The preposition is generally placed *immediately before* its object ; but it is also not un-

frequently placed *after* it, and even at a considerable distance from it ; thus,

We may either say, "*For* | *such conduct* I am at a loss to account," or "*Such conduct* I am at a loss to account *for*."\*

The words which admit of the greatest latitude in this respect are the relatives† *which* and *whom* ; as,

"Milton is a poet *in* | *whom* I much delight," or

"Milton is a poet *whom* I much delight | *in*."

### POSITION OF CONJUNCTIONS.

**RULE XIV.** The position of conjunctions varies according as they connect sentences, or merely parts of sentences.

Such conjunctions as *than*, *if*, *though*, *although*, *that*, *when*, *lest*, *unless*, &c., which connect clauses, but never sentences, always take the first place in the clauses to which they refer ; as,

"The Tweed is larger *than* | *the Teviot*."

---

\* The practice of separating the preposition from its object is condemned by some critics, but obviously on insufficient grounds. Not only is this practice more accordant than the opposite with the original idiom of our language, as appears from its prevailing more in colloquial discourse, but it is defensible on general principles. The preposition, being expressive of the relation between a verb or noun as its subject, and a noun or pronoun as its object, is as closely connected with the former as with the latter. When the former, therefore, is separated from the latter by intervening words, as often happens, the speaker or writer is reduced to the alternative either of making the preposition follow its subject, in which case it must be detached from its object, or of making it precede its object, in which case it must be detached from its subject. The choice, in itself arbitrary, can only be determined, in the instance of any particular language, by custom.—*Vide CAMPBELL'S Philosophy of Rhetoric*, b. iii. c. 4, for a full and satisfactory discussion of the point.

† It is worthy of remark, that though the relative *that* does not admit a preposition before it, it admits it at some distance after it. Thus, though we cannot say, "He is the same man *with that* you are acquainted," we can say, "He is the same man *that* you are acquainted *with*."

" *Though | he slay me, yet | will I trust in him.*"

" *Let him that standeth take heed lest | he fall.*"

The position of conjunctions which connect sentences is different, according as they consist of one syllable or of more than one syllable.

Monosyllabic conjunctions, with the exception of *then*, are placed at the beginning of the second sentence ; as,

" The orator was received on his entrance with great applause, great expectations having been formed of him. *But* when he began to speak there was a general feeling of disappointment."

" The company of profligate young men is perilous to your well-being. See, *then*, that you carefully avoid it."

Conjunctions of more than one syllable, with the exception of *whereas*, which is never transposed, may be transferred to one or more places from the beginning of the sentence according to the preference of sound ; as,

" The castle is strongly fortified, and full of brave and veteran troops. Its governor, *moreover*, is the hero of many a well-fought field. A stout and strenuous resistance is, *therefore*, to be anticipated. It were abject cowardice, and pure folly, *however*, for Britons to doubt of ultimate success."

#### EXERCISES ON ARRANGEMENT.

*Distinguish which of the following sentences is arranged conventionally and which rhetorically :—*

The red artillery flashed far.

Far flashed the red artillery.

These fires shall glow still redder.

Redder still these fires shall glow.

Have you sold your horse ?

Had he told me in time, I would have gone with him.

There appears to be a mistake.

" I will not agree," replied he, and departed.

Fallen is thy throne, O Israel !

My son, if sinners entice thee, consent thou not.

Thy threats, thy mercy, I defy !

So able and excellent a man has seldom appeared.

A man so excellent and able has seldom appeared.

Fortunate beyond his fellows is the man who has had a pious mother.

Down came the blow.

On they march, regular as rolling water.

Onward sweep the varied nations.

*Correct the improper collocation of the words in italics in the following conventional sentences :—*

Estimated is *the population* of Jerusalem at twenty thousand.

There *mountains* are round about Jerusalem.

The master *his apprentice* dismissed, without a reason assigning.

If you *me* respect, do not *my friend* despise.

He is *a* so deserving boy, that there *no fear* is of his success in life.

Winter is over, and come has *spring*; *that* with its flowers, *this* with its frost.

*Risen* is *the sun*; it is time for *me* and *you* to leave our beds.

*John* and *you* are defeated: *me* and *Robert* the judges declare to be the winners.

The house belongs to my brother, *which is built of brick*.

The book belongs to the master, *which contains so many fine stories*.

The village stands on the hill, *which has the fine steeple*: the village is in the valley, *whence the curling smoke ascends*.

The vale of the Tweed is beautiful *exceedingly*.

He *not only* came without his carriage, but without his servant.

*Not merely* is *she* young, but beautiful.

*The city* is *not only* fine, but the river on which it stands.

He kept back *not only* part of the truth; he uttered positive falsehoods.

You *never* are in time for school.

The lesson is *enough* long.

*Transpose the prepositions in the following sentences, in as many ways as the sense will admit :—*

It is a fact, *about* which men now rarely differ, that the paper-mill and the printing-press are inventions *for* which we cannot be too thankful.

*Of my warring course of life I had long before now repented; but from the love of travel I could not free my mind.*

*For all that you think, and speak, and do, you must at the last day account.*

*To you I oft have of my lot complained.*

*Such base conduct the very slaves whom you yesterday parted with would have been disgraced by.*

*Point out in the following sentences, the conjunctions which connect sentences, and those which connect only parts of sentences; also the sentences and parts of sentences which they respectively connect:—*

*I go to prepare a place for you. And if I go to prepare a place for you, I will come again and receive you to myself, that where I am there you may be also.*

*Let us not say we keep the commandments of the one, when we break the commandments of the other. For, unless we observe both, we obey neither.*

*If there's a Power above us,—*

*And that there is, all Nature cries aloud*

*Through all her works,—he must delight in virtue.*

*It is of the utmost importance to us, that we associate principally with the wise and virtuous. When, therefore, we choose our companions, we ought to be extremely cautious in our selection.*

*Without love to God, the enjoyment of him is unattainable. Now, as, that we may love God, it is necessary to know him; so, that we may know him, it is necessary to study his works.*

*Transpose the conjunctions in the following sentences:—*

*You have disregarded my counsel, then take the consequences.*

*The city was but ill provided in the means of defence. However, it made a vigorous resistance to the besiegers.*

*The river is broad and deep, and may not be crossed without peril. It is moreover swollen by the melting of the mountain snows.*

*Convert by transposition the following rhetorical sentences into conventional sentences:—*

*Though fickle be our climate, and deformed with dripping*

rains our seasons, yet our sullen skies and fields without a flower, I would not exchange for warmer France with all her vines.

My fields you may set on fire, and my children give to the sword ; myself you may drive forth a houseless, childless beggar, or load with the fetters of slavery ; but the hatred I feel to your oppression never can you conquer.

Deep in the ocean has sunk her husband beloved. Be thou her comforter, who art the widow's friend !

On came the evening. There was over all the land deep silence ; and though the sun in murky clouds went down, yet, that he would not rise at morning dawn in wonted brilliancy, none dreamed. But not long were men kept in suspense. Before midnight were heard over all the district unusual noises. The ocean became agitated without any apparent cause ; down fell the rain in torrents—a perfect deluge ! The ground heaved ; the houses and trees shook ; up sprang a tremendous hurricane ; quick darted the lightning. And with pale lips men whispered, “An earthquake ! an earthquake !” The earthquake it was : and that night the city of the Peruvians ceased to be !

The earth to thee its incense yields,  
The lark thy welcome sings,  
When, glittering in the freshen'd fields,  
The snowy mushroom springs.

Here, in a shrine that cast a dazzling light,  
Sate, fix'd in thought, the mighty Stagyrte.  
His sacred head a radiant zodiac crown'd,  
And various animals his sides surround.

#### Virtue

Matured inclines us up to God and heaven,  
By law of sweet compulsion strong and sure ;  
As gravitation to the larger orb  
The less attracts, through matter's whole domain.

Upon thy mother's knee, a new-born child,  
Weeping thou sat'st, whilst all around thee smiled ;  
So live, that, sinking into death's long sleep,  
Calm thou may'st smile, whilst all around thee weep.

Of man's first disobedience, and the fruit  
 Of that forbidden tree, whose mortal taste  
 Brought death into the world and all our wo,  
 With loss of Eden, till one greater Man  
 Restore us, and regain the blissful seat,  
 Sing, Heavenly Muse ! that on the secret top  
 Of Oreb, or of Sinai, didst inspire  
 That shepherd who first taught the chosen seed,  
 In the beginning how the heavens and earth  
 Rose out of chaos.

Such music (as 'tis said)  
 Before was never made ;

But when of old the sons of morning sung,  
 While the Creator great  
 His constellations set,  
 And the well-balanced world on hinges hung !

Know, God is every where ;  
 Not to one narrow partial spot confined,  
 Not, not to chosen Israel ; he extends  
 Through all the vast infinitude of space.  
 At his command the furious tempests rise—  
 The blasting of the breath of his displeasure ;  
 He tells the world of waters when to roar,  
 And, at his bidding, winds and seas are calm.  
 In Him, not in an arm of flesh, I trust ;  
 In Him, whose promise never yet has failed.

Me, tho' just right and the fix'd laws of heaven  
 Did first ordain your leader, next free choice,  
 With what besides in council or in fight  
 Hath been achieved of merit, yet this loss,  
 Thus far at least recovered, hath much more  
 Established in a safe unenvied thr one,  
 Yielded with full consent.

## PUNCTUATION.

IN speaking or reading a sentence, various pauses are made for the purpose of making the construction and meaning more distinct to the hearer.

*Punctuation* is the marking of these pauses, by points indicative of their length.

The principal points are, the *Comma* (,), the *Semicolon* (;), the *Colon* (:), and the *Period* (.).

The *Comma* represents the shortest pause, and is often used to mark the construction where very little interruption of voice is allowable.

The *Semicolon* marks a longer pause than the comma, and separates clauses less closely connected.

The *Colon* marks a longer pause than the semicolon, and indicates a still looser connexion between the clauses which it separates.

The *Period*, or full point, is used at the end of a sentence, to indicate that it is completed.

It is often said that a semicolon marks a pause double that of a comma, and a colon a pause double that of a semicolon. But no precise rule can be given on this subject. The length of the pause indicated by the same point is different in different sentences; and the proportion between the different points is by no means uniform. Besides, pauses are sometimes necessary in reading and speaking where usage does not warrant the insertion of any point.

The insertion or omission of points is in many cases very much a matter of taste. But there are certain situations to which custom has assigned the use of particular points.

## COMMA.

1. When a simple sentence is long, the subject and predicate consisting each of a number of words, a comma may, for the sake of distinctness, be placed between them; as,

“To be constantly employed in laudable pursuits, is characteristic of a wise man.”



In general a simple sentence does not admit of any point except the period ; as,

“ Diligence is essential to our success in life.”

2. When two or more words—whether nouns, adjectives, pronouns, verbs, or adverbs—are connected without the connecting word being expressed, the comma supplies the place of that word ; as,

“ Master, mistress, children and servants were all in the coach.”

“ Alfred was a brave, pious, and patriotic prince.”

“ Happy is the man who honours, obeys, and enjoys God.”

“ Send it to him, her, or me.”

“ You should seek after knowledge steadily, patiently, and perseveringly.”

3. *Absolute, relative, and, in general, all parenthetical clauses*, are separated from the other parts of a sentence by commas ; as,

“ Their general being killed, the army fled.”

“ The elephant, which you saw in the menagerie, took the child up with his trunk into his cage.”

“ The temperate man’s pleasures are durable, because they are regular.”

“ The pious man, even when persecuted, is the happy man.”

“ Providence has, I think, displayed a tenderness for mankind.”

“ Paul, the great Apostle of the Gentiles, saw our Saviour in a vision at mid-day.”

“ While the bridegroom tarried, they all slumbered and slept.”

“ The gulf, or bay, is dangerous.”

“ The Sciences, after a thousand indignities, retired from the palace of Patronage.”

4. The modifying words and phrases, *namely, however, hence, besides, finally, in short, at least*, and the like, are usually separated by commas.

5. Words denoting the person or object addressed are separated by commas ; as,

“ My tears, O Ryno, are for the dead.”

“ Wherefore, sirs, be of good cheer.”

6. A word or phrase emphatically repeated is separated by commas ; as,

“ Against thee, thee only, have I sinned.”

“ Turn ye, turn ye, why will ye die ?”

7. The words of another writer cited, but not formally introduced as a quotation, are separated by a comma ; as,

“ I pity the man who can travel from Dan to Beersheba, and cry, 'tis all barren.”

8. Words and clauses, though closely connected in construction, are often separated by a comma, when *contrast* or *opposition* is expressed ; as,

“ Prosperity gains friends, and adversity tries them.”

“ He was learned, but not pedantic.”

“ Though deep, yet clear ; though gentle, yet not still ;  
Strong, without rage ; without o'erflowing, full.”

9. When the absence of a word is indicated in reading or speaking by a pause, its place may be supplied by a comma ; as,

“ From law arises security ; from security, inquiry ; from inquiry, knowledge.”

“ To err is human ; to forgive, divine.”

#### SEMICOLON.

1. When a sentence consists of two parts, the one containing a complete proposition, and the other added as an inference or to give some explanation, the two parts are separated by a semicolon ; as,

“ Economy is no disgrace ; for it is better to live on a little, than to outlive a great deal.”

“ The little, bleak farm, sad and affecting in its lone and extreme simplicity, smiled like the paradise of poverty ; when the lark, lured thither by some green barley-field, rose ringing over the solitude.”

2. When a sentence consists of several members, each constituting a distinct proposition, and having a dependence upon

each other or upon some common clause; they are separated by semicolons ; as,

“ Wisdom hath builded her house ; she hath hewn out her seven pillars ; she hath killed her beasts ; she hath mingled her wine ; she hath also furnished her table.”

#### COLON.

1. When a sentence consists of two parts, the one so complete in itself as to admit a full point, and the other containing an additional remark, depending upon the former in sense though not in syntax, the connexion of the remark with the preceding proposition is indicated by a colon ; as,

“ Virtue is too lovely and useful to be immured in a cell the world is the sphere of her action.”

2. When a sentence which consists of an enumeration of particulars, each separated from the other by a semicolon, has its sense suspended till the last clause, that clause is disjoined from the preceding by a colon ; as,

“ If he has not been unfaithful to his king ; if he has not proved a traitor to his country ; if he has never given cause for such charges as have been preferred against him : why then is he afraid to confront his accusers ?”

#### PERIOD.

Besides being used to mark the completion of a sentence, the period is placed after initials, when used alone, as D. D. for Doctor of Divinity ; and after abbreviations, as, Lat. for Latin.

The other marks most commonly used are, the *Dash* (—), the *point of Interrogation* (?), the *point of Exclamation* (!), and the *Parenthesis* ( ).

The *Dash* marks a break in the sentence, or an abrupt turn ; as,

“ If thou art he—but O, how fallen !”

The *point of Interrogation* is put after a sentence which asks a question ; as,

“ What is it that thou hast done ?”

The *point of Exclamation* is used after sudden expressions of emotion ; as,

“ What an admirable piece of work is man ! ”

The *Parenthesis* is sometimes used to enclose a remark or clause not essential to the sentence in construction, but useful in explaining it, or introducing an important idea ; as,

“ Know then this truth (enough for man to know),  
Virtue alone is happiness below.”

### EXERCISES ON PUNCTUATION.

*Correct the errors and supply the defects of Punctuation in the following sentences :—*

#### COMMA.

The tear of sorrow, brings its own relief.

To be totally indifferent to praise or censure is a real defect in character.

Old ; young ; and middle-aged ; shared a common fate.

Homer Virgil and Milton, are the great epic poets.

Health, and peace, a moderate fortune, and a few friends, sum up the elements of earthly felicity.

Truth is fair and artless ; simple and sincere ; uniform and constant.

Charity, like the sun brightens all its objects.

They took away, their furniture clothes and stock, in trade.

By being admired, and flattered we are often corrupted.

They set out early ; and before the close of the day, arrived at the place of destination.

To prevent further altercation I submitted to the terms, proposed.

Hope the balm of life, soothes us under misfortune.

A placid spirit, is like a pure stream which reflects every object, in its just proportions.

A man, who is of a perverse disposition, will misapprehend and misrepresent, the most innocent words.

To relieve the indigent to comfort the afflicted to reward the deserving, is a noble, and humane employment.

The most obvious remedy, is to withdraw from their wicked society.

## SEMICOLON.

Straws swim upon the surface, but pearls lie at the bottom.

Philosophers assert that Nature is unlimited in her operations, that she has inexhaustible treasures in reserve, that knowledge will always be progressive, and that all future generations will continue to make discoveries; of which we have not the least idea.

Heaven is the region of gentleness and friendship, hell, of fierceness and animosity.

As there is a worldly happiness which God perceives to be disguised misery; as there are worldly honours which in his estimation, are reproach, so, there is a worldly wisdom, which in his sight is foolishness.

## COLON.

The Scriptures give us an attractive representation of the Deity, in these words, "God is love."

Do not flatter yourself with the hope of perfect happiness; there is no such thing in the world.

A Divine Legislator uttering his voice from heaven, an Almighty Governor stretching forth his arm to punish or reward; these are the considerations, which overcome the world; which support integrity and check guilt.

*Point the following sentences:—*

The pleasures habits and maxims of this world are often most keenly pursued by those who exclaim most loudly against them.

The grave says Solomon is never satisfied birth youth beauty learning titles and fame are all swallowed up by the insatiable tomb.

To act the part of a father to those upon whose helpless years no parent of their own ever smiled to rear up the plant that was left alone to perish in the storm to watch and superintend its growth till it flourishes and brings forth fruit this is a noble and beneficial employment well adapted to a generous mind.

How little does he know of true happiness who is a stranger to that intercourse of good offices and kind affections which by a pleasing charm attaches men to each other and circulates joy from heart to heart.

Listen with reverence to every reprehension of conscience and preserve the most quick and accurate sensibility to right and wrong If ever your moral impressions begin to decay and your natural abhorrence of guilt to lessen you have ground to dread that the ruin of virtue is fast approaching.

Fast by the margin of a mossy rill  
That wander'd gurgling down a heath-clad hill  
An ancient shepherd stood oppress'd with wo  
And eyed the ocean's flood that foam'd below  
Where gently rocking on the rising tide  
A ship's unwonted form was seen to ride.

*Divide into sentences and point the following paragraphs :—*

For what purpose do these charming flowers come forth is it merely to please our eyes with their brilliant colours and regale the sense of smelling with their odoriferous perfumes or is it to attract those numerous insects which swarm among them and riot amidst their liquid sweets that flowers were designed for both these purposes is apparent from the sensations which we experience when we visit the delightful spots where they grow and from the assiduous eagerness which the busy bee evinces in roaming from flower to flower to extract their balmy juices but there is another and that a more important use to which the flowery tribe may be made subservient in Reason's ear they become preachers the upright philosopher of the land of Uz and that devout admirer of the works of Nature David king of Israel both take occasion to compare our uncertain tenure of human life to the frail and perishable state of a flower the Prophet Isaiah represents the transient glory of the crown of pride as being like one of these fading beauties and our Saviour demonstrates that an important lesson against too anxious care and against pride in dress may be learned from a right consideration of these gay visitants "consider the lilies how they grow they toil not neither do they spin and yet I say unto you that Solomon in all his glory was not arrayed like one of these."

Whatever be thy fear if thou knowest the truth the truth shall give thee relief have the terrors of guilt taken hold of thee behold the Redeemer hath borne thy sins in his own body on the tree and if thou art willing to forsake them thou know-

est with certainty that they shall not be remembered in the judgment against thee hast thou with weeping eyes committed to the grave the child of thy affections the virtuous friend of thy youth or the beloved partner whose tender attachment lightened the load of life behold they are not dead thou knowest that they live in a better region with their Saviour and their God that still thou holdest thy place in their remembrance and that thou shalt soon meet them again to part no more dost thou look forward with trembling to the days of darkness that are to fall on thyself when thou shalt lie on the bed of sickness when thy pulse shall have become low when the cold damps have gathered on thy brow and the mournful looks of thy attendants have told thee that the hour of thy departure is come to the mere natural man this scene is awful and alarming but if thou art a Christian if thou knowest and obeyest the truth thou needest fear no evil the shadows which hang over the valley of death shall retire at thy approach and thou shalt see beyond it the spirits of the just and an innumerable company of angels the future companions of thy bliss bending from their thrones to cheer thy departing soul and to welcome thee into everlasting habitations.

Not clothed in purple or fine linen stood  
 The wilderness-apostle he was found  
 O'er-canopied by wild rocks fringed with wood  
 Where Nature's sternest scenery darkly frown'd  
 There stood the seer his loins begirt around  
 With outstretch'd hand bare brow and vocal eye  
 His voice with sad solemnity of sound  
 More thrilling than the eagle's startling cry  
 "Repent repent" exclaim'd "Christ's kingdom draweth nigh  
 My name is Norval on the Grampian hills  
 My father feeds his flock a frugal swain  
 Whose constant care was to increase his store  
 And keep his only son myself at home.

The pursuit I led  
 Till we o'ertook the spoil-encumbered foe  
 We fought and conquer'd ere a sword was drawn  
 An arrow from my bow had pierced their chief  
 Who wore that day the arms which now I wear.

## PART IV.

---

### PROSODY.

**PROSODY\*** is that part of grammar which treats of the structure of Poetical Composition.

Poetry differs in structure from prose chiefly in requiring a more measured arrangement of words, and in admitting greater license in the application of them.

The measured arrangement which distinguishes poetry from prose is called *Versification*.

The application of words, peculiar to poetry, is called *Poetical License*.

### VERSIFICATION.

The harmony of Verse depends upon the regular recurrence at fixed intervals of syllables of a certain quantity.

Syllables are either *long* or *short*, *accented* or *unaccented*.

A syllable is *long* or *short* according to the time occupied in pronouncing it; as, tūbe, tūb.

A syllable is *accented* or *unaccented* according as

---

\* *Prosody* strictly denotes only that musical tone or melody which accompanies speech. But the usage of modern grammarians justifies an extremely general application of the term.



stress of the voice is placed upon it in pronunciation ; as, *de'te'r, i'njury*.

The harmony of English verse depends chiefly upon the return at regular intervals of *accented*, and not of *long* syllables.

It is only necessary to repeat any verse in English to perceive, that without the alternate percussive of accented and unaccented syllables it would not be harmonious. Thus :—

“ Of ma'n's first di'sobe'dience a'nd the fru'it  
Of tha't forbi'dden tre'e, whose m'ortal tas'te  
Brought de'ath into' the wor'ld and a'll our wo'e.”

Some instances occur of harmony produced by the quantity alone, apart from accent ; as,

“ Fōūntaīns, and ye that warble as yē flōw.”  
“ For Elōquēnce thē sōul ; lōng chārms thē sēnse.”

But such instances are few : the accent, in the vast majority of cases, determines the pronunciation, and consequently the harmony of a line, without regard to the natural length of the syllables. Thus :—

“ Hūr'd he'adlōng fla'mīng from th' ethe'reāl sky'.”

A Verse is a measured line consisting of a certain number of regular returns of accented and unaccented syllables.

The number of accents in a verse determines the number of *feet*.

A *foot* consists generally of *two*, and sometimes of *three* syllables, one of which is always accented.

It is called *foot*, because it is by the aid of the accent which marks its principal syllable that we step along through the verse in a measured pace.

The principal feet are the *Iambus*, the *Trochee*, and the *Anapæst*.

An *Iambus* is a dissyllabic foot, having the accented syllable last ; as, *ad'o're*.

A *Trochee* is a dissyllabic foot, having the accented syllable first; as, *no'ble*.

An *Anapaest* consists of three syllables, the two first unaccented, and the last accented; as, *interce'de*.

*Rhyme* is the name by which we distinguish verses that are closed by final syllables of a similar sound; as,

"Hope, for a season, bade the world farewell,  
And Freedom shriek'd—as Kosciusko fell!"

"A king sat on the rocky brow  
Which looks o'er sea-born Salamis;  
And ships by thousands lay below,  
And men in nations:—all were his!  
He counted them at break of day—  
And when the sun set—where were they?"

Verses which have not this similarity of sound in their final syllables are called *Blank Verse*; as,

"How still the morning of the hallow'd day!  
Mute is the voice of rural labour, hush'd  
The ploughboy's whistle, and the milkmaid's song;  
The scythe lies glittering in the dewy wreath  
Of tedded grass, mingled with fading flowers  
That yestermorn bloom'd waving in the breeze."

Verses are distinguished by various names according to the feet that prevail in them; as, *Iambic*, *Trochaic*, *Anapaestic*.

The two most common kinds of verse are the *Iambic* and *Trochaic*.

*Iambic* verse has the weak percussaion first, and the loud last.

*Trochaic* verse has the loud first, and the weak last.

#### IAMBIC VERSE.

1. The most common and also the most dignified verse in English poetry consists of five *Iambic* feet or ten syllables; as,

"De'part|ed spi'ri|ts o'f | the mig'h|ty de'ad!|  
Ye who' | at Ma'r|atho'n | and Leu'c|tra ble'd!"

“ Perha’ps | in thi’s | ne’glect|ed spo’t | is la’id |  
 Some heart once pregnant with celestial fire ;  
 Hands, that the rod of empire might have sway’d,  
 Or waked to ecstasy the living lyre.”

“ How sw’et | the moo’n|light slee’ps | up’on | this  
 ba’nk !|

Here will we sit, and let the sounds of music  
 Creep in our ears ; soft stillness and the night  
 Become the touches of sweet harmony !”

This measure, commonly called the *Heroic*, has a grave and majestic march, well suited to heroic argument, especially if it be not fettered with rhyme.

It admits of some freedom for the purpose of giving it variety, especially in the beginning and end of the line. The *first* foot is often a Trochee instead of an Iambus ; and the *last* has often a short unaccented syllable appended to the Iambus. Thus :—

“ Da’ughter | of God and man, accomplished Eve.” |

“ Ple’asures | the sex, as children birds pursue.”

“ ’Tis Heaven itself that points out an here’af|t’er.” |

Sometimes even greater irregularities are admissible ; as,

“ Burnt after him to the bottomless pit.”

A verse of six feet or twelve syllables, called an *Alexandrine* line, is occasionally introduced into heroic verse, especially at the close of a passage ; as,

“ Time writes no wrinkle on thine azure brow—

Such as | Crea|tion’s dawn | beheld|, thou roll|est now|.”

2. A shorter Iambic verse is made from the former, by cutting off one Iambus, or two syllables ; as,

“ Thou, Ste’ll|a, wa’st | no lon’ger yo’ung, |  
 When fir’st | for the’e | my ly’re | I stru’ng.” |

“ Thou ar’t | O Go’d, | the li’fe | and li’ght |  
 Of a’ll | this wo’nd|rous worl’d | we se’e. |

Its glow by day, its smile by night,  
 Are but reflections caught from thee !”

This measure is sometimes varied, to adapt it to light subjects, by the addition of two syllables, forming a double rhyme ; as,

“ His brow’n|y ba’ck | and sid’es | Hercu|lean  
Support the star and string cerulean.”

3. Iambic verse is sometimes further shortened into six syllables by cutting off another foot ; as,

“ Though tho’u | the wa’t|ers wa’rp |  
Thy sti’ng | is n’ot | so sha’rp.” |

“ In pla’c|es fa’r | or nea’r, |  
Or fa’m|ous o’r | obscu’re, |  
Where wholesome is the air,  
Or where the most impure.”

The four-lined stanza of Psalmody generally consists of alternate Iambic verses of four and three feet ; as,

“ Lord, th’ou | didst lov’e | Jeru’s|ale’m, |  
Once she’ | was a’ll | thine ow’n ; |  
Her love thy fairest heritage,  
Her power thy glory’s throne.”

A residuary syllable or half foot is often added to an Iambic line for the sake of variety.

“ And coun’t|less kin’gs | have i’n|to d’ust | been hu’m|bled,  
While n’ot | a fr’ag|ment o’f | thy fle’sh | has cr’umb|led !”

“ Waft, wa’ft | ye wind’s, | his sto’|ry,  
And on’ ye wa’ters ro’ll,  
Till, li’ke | a se’a | of glo’|ry,  
It spreads from pole to pole !”

#### TROCHAIC VERSE.

Trochaic verse is also of various lengths.

1. It sometimes contains *six* feet or twelve syllables ; as,

“ O’n a | m’ountain | stretch’ed be|ne’ath a | h’oary | w’illow, |  
Lay a shepherd swain, and view’d the rolling billow.”

2. It sometimes contains *five* feet or ten syllables; as,

“ A’l that | wa’lk on | fo’ot or | ri’de in | ch’ariots; |  
All that dwell in palaces or garrets.”

3. It sometimes contains *four* feet or eight syllables; as,

“ On’ they | ma’rch though | to’ self- | al’aughter, |  
Regular as rolling water.”

4. It sometimes contains *three* feet or six syllables; as,

“ Or’ where | He’brus | w’anders, |  
Rolling in meanders.”

5. The Trochaic line most generally employed contains *three* feet and an additional syllable; as,

“ Ro’me be | cr’ush’d to | o’ne wide | *tomb*,  
B’ut be | sti’ll the | Ro’man’s | *Rome*.”

“ Li’ke le|vi’a|tha’ns a|float  
La’y their | b’ulwarks | o’n the | *brine* ;  
While the sign of battle flew  
On the lofty British line.”

#### ANAPÆSTIC VERSE.

In Anapæstic verse, the interval between the accented syllables is doubled, and the percussion falls on every third syllable.

Anapæstic verse is, in common with Iambic and Trochaic, of various lengths.

1. It sometimes consists of *four* feet or twelve syllables; as,

“ From the kna’ves, | and the fo’ols, | and the fo’ps | of the  
ti’me ; |  
From the drudges in prose, and the triflers in rhyme.”

“ And the w’id|ows of A’|shur are lou’d | in their wa’il, |  
And the idols are broke in the temple of Baal.”

2. It sometimes consists of *three* feet or nine syllables; as,

“ Who are the’y | that now bi’d | us be slave’s ? |  
They are fo’es | to the go’od | and the fre’e.” |

3. It sometimes consists of *two* feet or six syllables; as,

“ But his cou’r|age ’gan fai’l, |  
For no a’rts | could avai’l.” |

Anapæstic verse admits of variety, as well as the Iambic and Trœchaic, by taking an additional syllable at the end, and sometimes a dissyllabic foot at the beginning of the line; as,

“ On the war’m | cheek of you’t’h | smiles and r’o|ses are  
ble’nd|ing.” |

“ But his cou’r|age ’gan fa’il | him, |  
For no a’rts | could ava’il | him.” |

“ If ’e’er | in thy sigh’t | I found fa’v|our, Ap’ol|lo, |  
De’fe’nd | me from al’l | the dis’as|ters that fo’l|low.” |

Iambic, Trœchaic, and Anapæstic feet all admit of occasional intermixture; and many beautiful passages in our poets cannot be scanned without the use of all of them.

The following are examples :—

“ Rests secu’re | the ri’gh|teous ma’n : |  
At h’is | Redee’m|er’s be’ck, |  
Sure t’ em|erge | and ri’s|e | agai’n, |  
And mo’unt | abo’ve | the wre’ck.” |

“ And the’re | lay the ri’d|er distor’t|ed and pal’e, |  
With the de’w | on his bro’w | and the ru’s|t | on his m’ail.” |

“ Awa’ke, | ’tis the te’r|ror of war’, |  
The cr’es|cent is tos’s’d | on the w’ind.” |

#### POETICAL LICENSE.

The language of poetry admits of several peculiarities in its grammatical structure, in order to fit it the better for being formed into regular numbers.

1. Poetry admits of the use of words and phrases which in prose would be accounted obsolete.

Such phrases give to poetical composition that rust of antiquity, which is a great beauty, if not carried so far as to make the diction uncouth and obscure.

2. Poetry admits of a bolder transposition of words than prose: the *rhetorical* arrangement being as much the usual order in the former as the *conventional* is in the latter.

3. Some words are lengthened by a syllable, and others abbreviated, to adapt them to the purposes of measured composition. Thus, for *part*, the poets often use *dispart*; for *chain*, *enchain*; for *morning*, *morn*; for *valley*, *vale*.

4. Poetry admits of a liberal use of nouns for adjectives; as,

“ Amid the *greenwood* shade this boy was bred.”

5. In the use of conjunctions in pairs, *nor* is often substituted for *neither*, and *or* for *either*; as,

“ To them *nor* stores nor granaries belong,  
Nought but the woodland and the pleasing song.”

“ Remote, unfriended, melancholy, slow,  
Or by the lazy Scheldt or wandering Po.”

6. Poetry admits of great variety of elliptical expressions, and even allows the omission, in certain cases, of important parts of speech. Thus,

Two words are contracted into one; as, ‘*Twas*, for *It was*; ‘*Tis*, for *It is*; ‘*Twill*, for *It will*; ‘*We’ll*, for *We will*.

Vowels and sometimes consonants are elided to run two syllables into one; as,

“ *T’alarm th’eternal* midnight of the grave.”

“ *Whate’er* she hides beneath her verdant floor.”

“ The hunter-steed exulting o’er the dale.”

“ Till, at advantage *ta’en*, his brand  
Forced Rod’rick’s weapon from his hand.”

Nouns are often omitted in interrogative sentences ; as,  
 “ *Lives there who loves his pain ?* ” that is, “ *Lives there a man.* ”

Verbs are often omitted, especially such as express address or answer ; as,

“ *To whom the monarch ;* ” that is, “ *To whom the monarch said or replied.* ”

Prepositions are often omitted ; as,

“ *He mourn’d no recreant friend, no mistress coy ;* ” that is, “ *He mourned for no recreant friend,* ” &c.

#### EXERCISES ON PROSODY.

*Scan the following verses :—*

The fiery courser, when he hears from far  
 The sprightly trumpets and the shouts of war,  
 Pricks up his ears, and, trembling with delight,  
 Shifts place, and paws, and hopes the promised fight.

Should fate command me to the farthest verge  
 Of the green earth, to distant barbarous climes,  
 Rivers unknown to song ; where first the sun  
 Gilds Indian mountains, or his setting beam  
 Flames on the Atlantic isles ;—’tis nought to me,  
 Since God is ever present—ever felt,  
 In the void waste as in the city full ;  
 And, where He vital breathes, there must be joy.

No longer Autumn’s glowing red  
 Upon our forest hills is shed ;  
 No more beneath the evening beam  
 Fair Tweed reflects their purple gleam ;  
 Away hath pass’d the heather-bell  
 That bloom’d so rich on Needpath-fell ;  
 Sallow his brow, and russet bare  
 Are now the sister heights of Yare.



Our native land—our native vale—  
 A long—a last adieu !  
 Farewell to bonny Teviotdale,  
 And Cheviot's mountains blue.  
 The battle-mound—the Border tower,  
 That Scotia's annals tell—  
 The martyr's grave—the lover's bower,  
 To each—to all—farewell !

“ Earth to earth, and dust to dust ! ”  
 Here the evil and the just,  
 Here the youthful and the old,  
 Here the fearful and the bold,  
 Here the matron and the maid,  
 In one silent bed are laid !

Now joy, old England, raise !  
 For the tidings of thy might,  
 By the festal cities' blaze,  
 While the wine-cup shines in light ;  
 And yet amidst that joy and uproar,  
 Let us think of them that sleep,  
 Full many a fathom deep,  
 By thy wild and stormy steep,  
 Elsinore !

An Orpheus ! an Orpheus ! he works on the crowd,  
 He sways them with harmony merry and loud ;  
 He fills with his power all their hearts to the brim—  
 Was aught ever heard like his fiddle and him ?

Britannia needs no bulwarks,  
 No towers along the steep ;  
 Her march is o'er the mountain-waves,  
 Her home is on the deep :  
 With thunders from her native oak  
 She quells the floods below,  
 As they roar on the shore,  
 When the stormy tempests blow.

Last came Joy's ecstatic trial :  
 He with ivy crown advancing,

First to the lively pipe his hand address'd ;  
But soon he saw the brisk awakening viol,  
Whose sweet entrancing voice he loved the best.  
They would have thought, who heard the strain,  
They saw in Tempe's vale her native maids,  
Amidst the festal sounding shades,  
To some unwearied minstrel dancing ;  
While as his flying fingers kiss'd the strings,  
Love framed with Mirth a gay fantastic round ;  
Loose were her tresses seen, her zone unbound,  
And he, amidst his frolic play,  
As if he would the charming air repay,  
Shook thousand odours from his dewy wings.

THE END.

# WORKS ON EDUCATION,

PUBLISHED BY

OLIVER & BOYD, EDINBURGH.

**A** SERIES of LESSONS in PROSE and VERSE, progressively arranged; intended as an Introduction to the "COURSE of ELEMENTARY READING in SCIENCE and LITERATURE." To which is added, a List of Prefixes, Affixes, and Latin and Greek Primitives, which enter into the Composition of the Words occurring in the Lessons. By the Rev. J. M. M'CULLOCH, A. M., Minister of Kelso, and formerly Head-Master of Circus-Place School, Edinburgh. Third Edition.

12mo. 2s. 6d. bound.

This little work, in common with the author's "Course of Elementary Reading,"—to which it is meant to be introductory,—has been prepared in adaptation to the Improved System of Teaching, which has of late years been so generally introduced into our initiatory schools. Being intended for seminaries where the preceptor makes it his business to instruct his pupils in the *meaning* of what is read, as well as in the *art* of reading, such lessons only have been introduced as appeared well fitted to stimulate youthful curiosity, and enrich the mind with the knowledge of useful and interesting facts. Simple extracts, relating to Natural History, Elementary Science, Religion, and the Duties of the Young, have been preferred to Dramatic Scenes, impassioned Poetry, and Parliamentary Orations. And, while no pieces have been admitted but such as seemed likely to inform and entertain, care has been taken to abridge and otherwise alter them, so as to adapt their style as well as their sentiments to the juvenile capacity.

It may be mentioned, as new features in this work, that the extracts are progressively arranged according to their simplicity,—that each Section is preceded by Exercises on the more difficult words that occur in it,—and that, besides the ordinary selections, there is a series of Elliptical Lessons, or what have been termed, by the ingenious author of the "Divisions of Holycot," *Rational Readings*. The list of Prefixes, Affixes, and Latin and Greek Primitives, given in the Appendix, is, since the publication of the author's "Course of Elementary Reading," no longer a novelty in works of this description.

"A very excellent elementary book, which we cannot recommend too strongly to tutors and parents."—*Asiatic Journal*.

"These Lessons are intended for the young, for whose instruction they are admirably adapted; but, containing extracts from very many celebrated authors, the sentiments communicated will be found valuable by those of riper years. This book is deserving of a place in every respectable seminary."—*Imperial Magazine*.

"This is an excellent little work for teaching the elements of reading to youth, and we can honestly recommend it for that purpose."—*Metropolitan Magazine*.

"This is the best selection we have yet met with. It is meant as an introduction to the author's *Course of Elementary Reading in Science and Literature*, which it is well fitted to prove. There is not an exceptionable line in the work, not a passage that does not breathe a proper spirit, or introduce something highly worthy to be known."—*Atlas*.

WORKS ON EDUCATION.

**A COURSE of ELEMENTARY READING** in SCIENCE and LITERATURE, compiled from Popular Writers, for the Use of Circus-Place School; to which is added, a Copious List of the Latin and Greek Primitives which enter into the Composition of the English Language. By the Rev. J. M. M'CULLOCH, A. M. Fourth Edition. 12mo. 3s. 6d. bound.

The compiler has admitted into his pages only such lessons as he considered fitted to stimulate juvenile curiosity, and enrich the mind with useful knowledge. Great space has been allotted to Natural Philosophy and Natural History; but not more, he feels assured, than the claims of these sciences and the taste of the present age justify. Those who have not attended to the subject, can have no idea of the delight with which children listen to details of natural history and explanations of common phenomena; and it is surely impossible too early to introduce young persons to studies which tend more than any other to form habits of observation and reflection, and to inspire admiration of the power and wisdom manifested in every part of creation.

The list of Latin and Greek Primitives, given in the Appendix,—a novelty in a work of this description,—offers advantages too obvious to require any lengthened explanation. Besides being indispensable to enable the pupil to understand the *meaning* of what he reads, it will serve as a preparation for the study of the learned languages, if not as a partial substitute for them.

"M'Culloch's Course of Elementary Reading is compiled on an admirable plan; for he has sought to make 'reading lessons' the vehicle of many entertaining facts and much useful knowledge, while he has not excluded eloquence and poetry from his selections. The execution of the book is as good as its plan."—*New Monthly Magazine*.

"From the complexion and character of this work, every one will perceive that its primary design is for the use of schools, and, we may add, for young persons of every description who are anxious to have their taste refined and their minds imbued with exalted sentiment and useful knowledge. The articles are both elegant and instructive; and, in a particular manner, those which belong to the classes of 'Natural Science' and 'Natural History' will be read with a considerable degree of interest and advantage."—*Imperial Magazine*.

**AN OUTLINE of SACRED GEOGRAPHY**; with References to the Passages of Scripture in which the most Remarkable Places are mentioned; and Notes, chiefly historical and descriptive. For the Use of Schools. By ALEXANDER REID, A. M., Head-Master of Circus-Place School, Edinburgh. 18mo. 6d. sewed.

"Mr Reid's well-known experience and success as a public teacher, are sufficient guarantees for the utility of this unpretending little school-book; and, for ourselves, we can safely affirm, after a careful perusal of its contents, that we know of none on the same subject so adapted to convey instruction and interest to the young in the reading of the Sacred Volume."—*Presbyterian Review*.

## WORKS ON EDUCATION.

**A COMPENDIUM of MODERN GEOGRAPHY ;**  
with Remarks on the Physical Peculiarities, Productions, Commerce, and Government of the various Countries ; Questions for Examination at the end of each Division ; and Descriptive Tables, in which are given the Pronunciation, and a concise Account of every Place of importance throughout the Globe. By the Rev. ALEX. STEWART, Author of "The History of Scotland," &c. Fourth Edition, thoroughly revised and considerably enlarged.—Illustrated by Ten New Maps constructed for the Work, and an Engraving showing the Heights of the principal Mountains in the World.  
18mo. 3s. 6d. bound.

The general approbation with which the former impressions of this work were received, has encouraged the Publishers to use every exertion to render this New Edition still more deserving of preference ; and it is believed that, in arrangement, in accuracy, and in extent of information, this Compendium may be confidently pronounced the most complete, as well as by far the cheapest, Elementary Work on Geography that ever issued from the press.

"What an admirable elementary book—how elaborate, and yet how simple ; how precisely exact, and still how abounding ; how superfluously crowded, we had almost said, with details interesting as they are important."—*Monthly Review*.

"This Compendium is the best and fullest we have seen.—The work seems scarcely susceptible of further improvement in the same bulk."—*Monthly Magazine*.

"We cannot speak in too favourable terms of the admirable arrangement of this work, which does infinite credit to Mr Stewart."—*Asiatic Journal*.

"We are happy in adding our testimony to that of the many journalists who have expressed their approbation of this little work. It is extremely well arranged, and very neatly got up. We think it unquestionably superior to either Goldsmith's or Guy's."—*New Monthly Magazine*.

"A more compact, carefully compiled, and useful volume has seldom fallen under our observation. It is illustrated by ten maps, excellently executed, considering their size ; and, with its judicious descriptive tables, combines, in some measure, the advantages of a Gazetteer with a Geographical Grammar."—*Examiner*.

"We are glad to see a second edition of this excellent school-book, which contains as much accurate and valuable information as many volumes of twice its size and price. Indeed, in the latter respect, it is matched by few productions of the press, even in this age of cheap books. A handsome volume of upwards of three hundred very closely-printed pages, strongly bound, and containing ten well-executed maps, has never before, we think, been offered to the public for so small a sum. It is a work, moreover, which, while its explanations are well adapted to the capacity of youth, bears throughout the marks of patient and careful research in a very superior degree to most school-books. We would particularly recommend to attention the descriptive tables appended to the general account of every country, which are drawn up with extraordinary neatness, and in such a manner as to comprehend really a wonderful quantity of information in a very small space. Taken altogether, they serve the purpose of a Gazetteer of all the principal places in the world, including, as they do, between two and three thousand names of kingdoms, cities, mountains, rivers, &c., with a short description of each, and what is extremely useful and important, the correct or customary pronunciation in all cases in which any doubt or difficulty can be felt. Teachers as well as pupils will feel grateful to the author for this part of his labours. Upon the whole, the book well deserves the popularity it has acquired, and which we have no doubt this new impression will both maintain and extend."—*Athenæum*.









